

ROYAL NAVAL HANDBOOK
OF
FIELD TRAINING

1926

Glyn, Mills & Co.



(Established 1753)
Registered with unlimited liability, 1885.

incorporating

CHILD & Co. AND HOLT & Co.
(Established before 1600) (Established 1809)



BANKERS :

Army & Air Force Agents, Navy & Prize Agents.

Head Office - 67 LOMBARD STREET, E.C.3
Child's Branch - 1 FLEET STREET, E.C.4
Holt's Branch - 3 & 4 WHITEHALL PLACE, S.W.1

Managing Partners :

LORD WOLVERTON,
LAURENCE CURRIE,
LORD HILLINGDON.

General The Hon. SIR H. A. LAWRENCE, G.C.B.
Brigadier-General A. MAXWELL, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O.
ERIC GORE BROWNE, D.S.O.
FREDERICK WILLIAM FANE.

Current and Deposit Accounts opened on the usual terms.
The Bank has Agents or Correspondents in all the principal cities and towns throughout the World, and can provide Banking facilities for its customers wherever desired.

Letters of Credit and Circular Notes issued, Currency Drafts supplied, and Remittances and Telegraphic Transfers made to all parts.

Foreign Currency Accounts opened.

The Safe Custody of Securities undertaken.

Dividends, Annuities, etc., received, and Coupons collected for customers.

Recovery of Income Tax and Preparation of Income and Super-tax statements. The Bank has a special department to advise and assist customers on questions relating to Income and Super-tax.

Navy and Prize Agents. Salvage claims preferred.

The DUTIES of EXECUTORS and TRUSTEES UNDERTAKEN.

Full particulars can be obtained on application to
THE TRUSTEE DEPT., 3 & 4 WHITEHALL PLACE, S.W. 1.

THREE STAR BRANDY

Indispensable
ashore and
afloat.

MARTELL'S 'CORDON BLEU'

Guaranteed 35 Years old.

The Reliable
Liqueur Brandy.

YOU USE METAL POLISH— WHY NOT THE BEST?

There is only one

GLITTERIT



The name implies what it will do—GLITTER-IT. The Quality surpasses all others. It is clean and economical in use, quick-drying, non-greasy, and gives a brilliant and lasting lustre, under all atmospheric conditions, to Silver Plate, Nickel, Brass, Copper, Aluminium, Celluloid, Glass, etc.

GLITTERIT, although superior in every respect to other Metal Polishes, is entirely a British product, and will cost you no more. When you are again purchasing Metal Polish, ask for **GLITTERIT**. Test it and you will be like others—so satisfied that you will tell your friends of its merits.

Manufactured by

The "Glitterit" Polish Co.,
81 Rosebery Avenue, London, E.C.1



CONCEIT

"Conceit is better than self-depreciation." Willoughby remarked. "It's sin to smoke a cigarette with the feeling that you ought to keep it behind your ear, but it's altogether good to smoke it as though you were entitled to a salute of 'twenty-one guns.' And, with a smile, he handed me his case of Balkan Sobranie."

Hand-made Cigarettes of Choice
YENIDJE (TURKISH) LEAF.

DUTY FREE PRICES.

Packed in A.T. tins of 100 each.

Large size 107/6 per 1,000

Medium size 100/-

Balkan Sobranie

Manufactured
in London by
Master Crafts-
men since 1879.

Obtainable through
all Naval Mess Caterers through-
out U.K. and Abroad.

ALBERT
WEINBERG,
3, Carlisle St.,
London, W.1.



Steraid retains its aseptic condition.
The dressings are not exposed to the atmosphere.
Exceedingly simple in use.
Rules out old-fashioned methods.
Air, dust, and germ proof.
In use, only the amount required is drawn out and cut off.
Doctors appreciate its efficiency.

Patent No. 221761.
Awarded the Certificate of the Institution of Hygiene.

Sole Manufacturers:

ROBERT BAILEY & SON, LTD.
Marriott St. Mills, Stockport, England.

CONTRACTORS TO HOME & COLONIAL GOVERNMENTS, HOSPITALS, RAILWAYS, &c.

MANUFACTURERS OF ALL DESCRIPTIONS OF HIGH CLASS SURGICAL DRESSINGS and First Aid Equipments of Guaranteed British Manufacture.

Wholesale and Export only.

Phone: 2794.

Telegrams: "UNDISPUTED, STOCKPORT."

ALFRED RODEN & SON, Ltd.

Goldsmiths, Silversmiths,
Manufacturers,

Cutlery, Electro-plate
etc., etc.

Makers of Medals,
Badges, Challenge
Cups, Shields, etc.

Suppliers to all the
leading Sports Clubs,
Military, Police and
Government Departments.



Specialists in Prize
Trophies of every
description: Engagement
Rings; Wedding
Presents: Xmas and
Birthday Gifts:
Presentations, etc.

The House for single articles at wholesale prices.

Write for quotations:—

55, HATTON GARDEN, E.C.1.

Telephone: Holborn 0139.

The RENOWN POCKET WATCH



Highly finished 15
Jewel compensated
lever movement in
Heavy English Hall-
marked Cases.

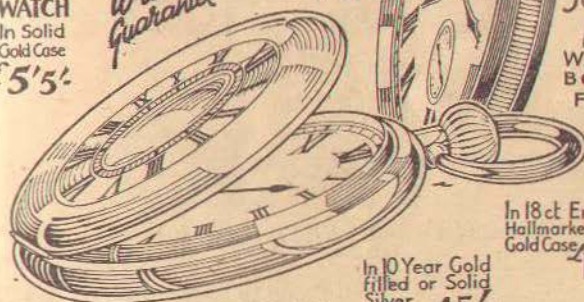
In 10 Year Gold
filled or Solid
Silver 35/-

In Solid Gold
Case 80/-

In 18 ct. English
Hallmarked Solid
Gold Case

DRESS
WATCH
In Solid
Gold Case
£5'5'

*Ten Years
Written
Guarantee*



Send
for
WATCH
BOOK
FREE.

In 18 ct. English
Hallmarked Solid
Gold Case 45'10'

In 10 Year Gold
filled or Solid
Silver 45/-

In Solid Gold
Case 77'4'

Bravingtons
KINGS CROSS, N1.
OPEN UNTIL 5 PM ON SATURDAY & 1 PM ON THURSDAY
71 LUDGATE HILL EC4 & 189 BROMPTON RD W.

THE
ADMIRALTY HANDBOOK
OF
WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY

A Standard Work on Wireless Telegraphy.

"Ships' officers will one day have to face the fact that a knowledge of wireless telegraphy will be needed from them before they can procure their certificate; the subject is too important to pass by without at least having a passing acquaintance within. We know of no better book on wireless as a text-book for them."

"NAUTICAL MAGAZINE."

"The Editor is to be congratulated on making the subject so interesting . . . considering its value it is a very cheap book and can be strongly recommended."

"NATURE."

"One of the most attractive radio bargains on the market."

"POPULAR WIRELESS."

Price 5s. net.

Post Free 5s. 9d.

H.M. STATIONERY OFFICE,

Adastral House - Kingsway - LONDON, W.C. 3
York Street, MANCHESTER. 120 George Street,
EDINBURGH. 1, St. Andrews Crescent, CARDIFF.

THE "ALBANY" CIGARETTE
10 Burlington Gardens, Bond Street, W.1



ESTABLISHED a quarter of a century ago in the quaint, historic little corner of old and fashionable London from which it takes its name, the "ALBANY" CIGARETTE has, without the aid of any of the more modern forms of publicity, built up a reputation for fine quality which has penetrated into every quarter of the civilised globe.

Delicately and perfectly made with rich, aromatic tobacco, from which all the coarser elements have been eliminated, and rolled in the purest of paper, these cigarettes cannot fail to please the most critical and exacting smoker.

As supplied to 250 Naval and Military Messes.

PRICES MODERATE.

SPECIAL TERMS TO CLUBS, MESSES, &c.,
ON APPLICATION.

"Self Thomas"
SHIPS' LEVER CLOCKS

Used in H.M. Navy
for nearly half a century.



SHIPS' BELL
STRIKE LOCKS

Striking 1 to 8 Bells.
One & eight day types.

Sole Agents: **R. M. MARPLES & SON** (Estd. 1868)
104, HIGH HOLBORN, LONDON, W.C.1.

(Makers of the "Impregnable" teak & "Britannia" oak Clocks.)



A superior cotton cellular fabric
made into vests, trunks and combinations.

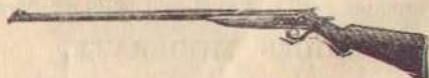
HYGEX is similar, but for wear in
the tropics.

Each excellent in its own sphere.

Sold by

GIEVES, Ltd., 21, Old Bond St., London, W.
Portsmouth, Plymouth, Chatham, Sheerness, Malta, etc.

FOR ALL YOUR SHOOTING REQUIREMENTS.



Try us for Gun and Rifle Repairs.

Send for complete Catalogue. Free if you mention "R. N. H."

MIDLAND GUN CO., Bath St., BIRMINGHAM.

That book you want!

Foyles can supply it

Dept. No. 6 is devoted to Books on Naval and Military Science, Training, History, and Biography, including the Air Force.

The entire stock of over 1,250,000 volumes (second-hand and new) on every conceivable subject is classified into twenty Departments, each of which is managed by an expert and issues its own Catalogue. If unable to call and examine the stock, write asking for Catalogue 608 (Naval and Military), mentioning requirements and interests; other suitable catalogues, or a special quotation will then be included (post free). Books sent on approval to any part of the world.

That book you do not want!

Foyles will buy it—a single volume to a library.

FOYLES

121-125, Charing Cross Road, London, W.C.2

DIRECT from the MALVERN HILLS



Burrow's Malvern Table Waters are British throughout, being derived solely from the famous St. Ann's Well. Their unique purity and health-giving properties have made them world-famous; they are recommended by Doctors for their dietetic value.

BURROW'S STILL MALVERN (Alpha Brand) is the genuine British natural Spring Water of St. Ann's Well—famous throughout the World.

BURROW'S MALVERNIA (regd.) Noted for its curative powers with Rheumatism, Gout, etc. Ideal for Wines and Spirits.

Also Ginger Ale, Tonic Water, etc.



BURROWS MALVERN TABLE WATERS



For prices and particulars write Dept. D.,

W. & J. BURROW, LTD., The Springs, MALVERN.

Depots: LONDON, BOURNEMOUTH, BRIGHTON, LIVERPOOL, etc.

When ordering Whisky why not try
ONE OF THE BEST—THE OLD UAM VAR
 * Maintains its pre-eminent position as the *

THE FAMOUS UAM VAR WHISKY
 Every Bottle bears on the Capsole, Cork & Label the name of the Sole Proprietors
INNES & GRIEVE Limited EDINBURGH & LONDON.
 ESTABLISHED 1794
 To be obtained from:—
All Ships' Stores Merchants in British Ports

ROYAL NAVAL HANDBOOK OF FIELD TRAINING.

1926.

By Authority of the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty.

G.D. 3692/25.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED BY HIS MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE.

To be purchased directly from

H.M. STATIONERY OFFICE at the following addresses:

Adastral House, Kingsway, London, W.C. 2;
 120, George Street, Edinburgh; York Street, Manchester;
 1, St. Andrew's Crescent, Cardiff; 15, Donegall Square West, Belfast;
 or through any Bookseller.

1926.

Price 1s. 9d. Net.

Royal Naval Handbook of Field Training, 1926.

ADMIRALTY.

August, 1926.

The "Royal Naval Handbook of Field Training, 1926," having been approved by My Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty, is hereby promulgated for information and guidance.

The "Royal Naval Handbook of Field Training, 1920," is hereby superseded, and is to be considered obsolete.

By Command of Their Lordships,

O. Murray

To all Flag Officers, Captains,
Commanders, and Com-
manding Officers of H.M.
Ships and Vessels.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Definitions - - - - -	18
General Instructions - - - - -	22

PART I.

SQUAD DRILL.

Squad Drill with Intervals.

	Section	Page
Formation of a Squad - - - - -	1	26
Position of Attention - - - - -	2	26
Standing at Ease - - - - -	3	27
Dressing a Squad with Intervals - - - - -	4	28
Numbering - - - - -	5	28
Turnings - - - - -	6	28
Saluting - - - - -	7	29
Taking off and Putting on Caps or Hats - - - - -	8	31

Marching.

Length of Pace, Time and Position - - - - -	9	31
Marching in Quick Time - - - - -	10	33
Marching in Slow Time - - - - -	11	33
The Halt - - - - -	12	33
Stepping Out - - - - -	13	34
Stepping Short - - - - -	14	34
Marking Time - - - - -	15	34
Changing Step when on the March - - - - -	16	34
Marching in Double Time - - - - -	17	35
Stepping Forward and Backward - - - - -	18	35
The Side Step - - - - -	19	36
Turning when on the March - - - - -	20	36

Squad Drill in Single Rank.

Formation of Squad - - - - -	21	37
Dressing in Single Rank - - - - -	22	37
Marching in Squad - - - - -	23	38
The Diagonal March - - - - -	24	38

	Section	Page
Changing Direction by Forming	25	39
Marching in Single File	26	39
Changing Direction in Single File	27	40
Marching in Single File and Forming up into Squad	28	40
Forming Two Deep from Single Rank	29	41
Forming Single Rank from Two Deep	30	41

Squad Drill in Two Ranks.

Formation of a Squad in Two Ranks	31	41
Dressing	32	42
Numbering a Squad	33	42
Opening and Closing a Squad	34	42
Changing Ranks	35	43
Marching in Squad and in File	36	43
Diagonal March	37	43
Changing Direction in Line	38	43
Changing Direction in File	39	44
Forming Squad	40	44
Forming Single File from File	41	45
Forming File from Single File	42	45
Formation of Fours and Elementary Training in March Discipline	43	45
Forming Fours	44	46
Movements in Fours	45	48
Obstacles	46	49
Dismissing with and without Arms	47	49

PART II.

RIFLE EXERCISES.

General Rules	1	50
The Order	2	51
The Stand at Ease from the Order (with or without Bayonets fixed)	3	51
Grounding and Taking up Arms	4	51
The Slope from the Order	5	52
The Order from the Slope	6	52
The Present from the Slope	7	52
The Slope from the Present	8	53
Fixing Bayonets	9	53

	Section	Page
Unfixing Bayonets	10	54
Inspection of Arms	11	55
The Trail from the Order	12	56
The Order from the Trail	13	56
The Slope from the Trail	14	57
The Trail from the Slope	15	57
To Change Arms at the Trail	16	57
The Short Trail from the Order	17	57
To Change Arms at the Slope	18	58
The Secure from the Slope	19	58
The Slope from the Secure	20	58
The Secure from the Order	21	59
The Order from the Secure	22	59
To Change Arms from the Secure	23	59
Slinging Arms	24	60
Piling Arms	25	60
Unpiling Arms	26	61
Drill for use on Board Ship—		
The Shoulder from the Order	27	62
The Present from the Shoulder	28	62
The Shoulder from the Present	29	62
The Slope from the Shoulder	30	63
The Shoulder from the Slope	31	63
The Order from the Shoulder	32	63
Manual Exercise at the Halt	33	63
Motions of the Rifle on the March	34	64
Fixing Bayonets on the March	35	65
The High Port	36	65
Paying Compliments with Arms	37	66

Funeral Exercises.

Opening to Funeral Firing Party Distance	38	66
Reverse Arms from the Present	39	66
Quick March	40	67
Change Arms	41	67
Slow March	42	67
Resting on Arms Reversed	43	68
Reverse from Resting on Arms Reversed	44	68
To Close from Funeral Firing Party Distance	45	68
Slope Arms from Resting on Arms Reversed	46	68
Ceremonial Firing	47	69
Rest on Arms Reversed from the Order	48	69
Present from Resting on the Arms Reversed	49	70

Accoutrements.

	Section	Page
Webbing Equipment for Seamen—		
General Description - - - -	50	70
To Assemble the Equipment - - -	51	72
Ammunition Carried - - - -	52	77
Care, Preservation and Marking - -	53	77

“Firing Exercises” as taught on Parade for Drill purposes.

Firing Standing - - - - -	54	79
Firing Lying - - - - -	55	82
Firing in other Positions - - - -	56	82
Muscle Exercises - - - - -	57	83

PART III.

FIELD MOVEMENT DRILL.

General Remarks - - - - -	1	85
Signals - - - - -	2	86
Control - - - - -	3	89
Changing Direction - - - - -	4	90
Partially changing Direction - - -	5	90
Inclining - - - - -	6	90

Practical Instruction in Field Movement Drill.

Section Formations - - - - -	7	91
Practical Instruction in Section Formations -	8	93
Platoon Formations - - - - -	9	94
Practical Instruction in Platoon Formations -	10	96
Company and Battalion Formations - - -	11	98
Fire Discipline - - - - -	12	99
Use of Cover - - - - -	13	101
Scouts - - - - -	14	102

PART IV.

SWORD EXERCISES.

	Section	Page
General Rules - - - - -	1	105
Mounted Officers' Swords - - - -	2	105
Dismounted Officers' Swords - - -	3	105
Guards of Honour - - - - -	4	106
Making a Report with Sword drawn -	5	106

With Sword Sheathed.

Position of “Attention” - - - - -	6	106
Position of “Stand at Ease” - - - -	7	107
The Quick March - - - - -	8	107
The Halt - - - - -	9	107

With Sword Drawn.

Drawing Swords - - - - -	10	107
Carry Swords - - - - -	11	108
Recover Swords - - - - -	12	108
Slope Swords - - - - -	13	108
Stand at Ease - - - - -	14	108
Stand Easy - - - - -	15	108
Return Swords - - - - -	16	109
Saluting with the Sword - - - - -	17	109
Eyes Front - - - - -	18	110
Funeral Exercises - - - - -	19	110
Drill for Lining Streets - - - - -	20	111

Cutlass Drill.

Position of “Attention” with Cutlass sheathed	21	111
“Stand at Ease” with Cutlass sheathed -	22	111
Marching with Cutlass sheathed - - -	23	111
Drawing Cutlass - - - - -	24	111
“Stand at Ease” with Cutlass drawn - -	25	111
“Attention” with Cutlass drawn - - -	26	112
Returning Cutlass - - - - -	27	112
Inspection of Cutlass - - - - -	28	112
Ceremonial - - - - -	29	112

Cutlass Exercise.

113 to
124

PART V.**GUARDS and SENTRIES (other than Ceremonial Guards and Guards of Honour), MARKS OF RESPECT, FUNERALS.**

Guards and Sentries.		Section	Page
Guards—when to turn out	- - -	1	125
A Guard falling in	- - -	2	126
Compliments paid by Guards on turning out	- - -	3	126
Guards on the march	- - -	4	126
Relieving a Guard	- - -	5	127
Relieving and posting Sentries	- - -	6	127
Marching reliefs	- - -	7	128
Sentries challenging	- - -	8	128
Salutes by Sentries	- - -	9	129
Equivalent ranks in the Services	- - -	10	130
Marks of Respect.			
Definitions	- - -	11	131
Compliments to be paid and returned	- - -	12	131
Funerals.			
General Rules	- - -	13	133
Equipment	- - -	14	134
Procedure at a Funeral	- - -	15	134
Table of Funeral parties	- - -	16	140

PART VI.**PLATOON DRILL.**

General Rules	- - -	1	142
Position of Platoon Officers and Section Leaders	- - -	1	143
Proving a Platoon	- - -	2	145
Changing Ranks	- - -	3	147
Formation of Fours	- - -	4	147
Marching in Line	- - -	5	148
Platoon in Line forming to the Right (or Left)	- - -	6	148
A Platoon in Line forming a Line of Sections moving in the same direction	- - -	7	149
A Line of Sections forming Platoon moving to a Flank in file, on the right (or left) section	- - -	8	149
A Platoon moving to a Flank in Fours, forming up into Platoon	- - -	9	150
A Platoon moving in Column of Fours, forming a line of Sections moving in the same direction	- - -	10	150

PART VII.**COMPANY DRILL.**

	Section	Page
General Rules - - - - -	1	152
Position of Company and Platoon Officers - - - - -	2	155
Organisation of a Company - - - - -	3	157
Inspection and telling off of a Company - - - - -	4	157
Dressing a Close Column or Column - - - - -	5	157
A Company advancing in Close Column or Column - - - - -	6	158
Turning about - - - - -	7	158
Column from Close Column, from the Halt to the Halt - - - - -	8	160
Close Column from Column, from the Halt to the Halt - - - - -	9	160
Advancing in Column from Close Column - - - - -	10	161
A Column on the March closing to Close Column - - - - -	11	161
A Close Column or Column moving to a flank in Fours - - - - -	12	161
A Column moving to a flank in Fours, forming Column of Fours moving in the same direction - - - - -	13	162
A Close Column changing direction - - - - -	14	163
A Column on the March changing direction - - - - -	15	164
A Column advancing in Column of Fours - - - - -	16	165
A Company moving in Column of Fours, forming Column moving in the same direction - - - - -	17	167
A Column advancing, forming Column of Fours in succession - - - - -	18	167
A Company moving in Column of Fours, forming Column moving in the same direction in succession - - - - -	19	169
A Column forming Column of Fours moving to a flank - - - - -	20	169
A Company moving in Column of Fours, forming Column facing a flank and moving forward - - - - -	21	170
A Close Column advancing in Column of Fours - - - - -	22	171
A Company moving in Column of Fours, forming Close Column at the Halt facing in the same direction - - - - -	23	171
A Close Column forming Column of Fours moving to a flank - - - - -	24	172
A Company moving in Column of Fours, forming Close Column at the Halt facing right (or left) - - - - -	25	173
A Company in line - - - - -	26	174

	Section	Page
A Line forming Close Column, or Column, facing the same direction, from the Halt to the Halt	27	175
A Close Column forming Line facing the same direction, from the Halt to the Halt	28	176
A Line advancing in Column	29	177
A Company advancing in Column, forming Line facing the same direction at the Halt	30	178
A Line forming Column facing the same direction	31	179
A Column forming Line facing the same direction	32	179
A Close Column on the March forming Line facing a flank	33	179
A Line forming Column facing a flank	34	180
A Column forming Line facing a flank and moving forward	35	180
A Line advancing in fours from the right of Platoons	36	181
A Company moving in Column of Fours, forming a line of Platoons in Fours moving in the same direction	37	182
A Company moving in a Line of Platoons in Fours, forming Column of Fours moving in the same direction	38	183
A Company moving in a Line of Platoons in Fours, forming Line facing a flank	39	184
A Line forming Close Column (or Column) a half Right (or half Left), from the Halt to the Halt	40	184
A Close Column forming Line a half Right (or half Left) on the Right (or Left)	41	185
A Line changing position a quarter, half or full Right (or Left)	42	187

PART VIII.

BATTALION DRILL.

Table of Officers, &c., of suitable rank or rating, for the various duties in a Battalion	1	188
General Instructions	2	188
Battalion in Close Column	3	189
Dressing a Battalion in Battalion Close Column	4	190
Forming Mass from Battalion Close Column	5	190
Battalion in Mass	6	193

	Section	Page
Dressing in Mass	7	194
Advancing or Retiring in Mass	8	196
Forming Battalion Close Column from Mass	9	196
Advancing or Retiring in Battalion Close Column	10	197
Battalion advancing or retiring in Column of Fours from Battalion Close Column	11	197
Column of Fours forming Battalion Close Column in the same direction	12	197
Column of Fours forming Mass in the same direction	13	199
Battalion advancing or retiring in Column of Fours from Mass	14	199
Column of Fours forming Mass facing a Flank	15	200
Column of Fours forming Battalion Close Column facing a Flank	16	200
Battalion Close Column forming Mass to a Flank	17	201
Battalion in Mass at the Halt forming Battalion Close Column at the Halt facing a Flank	18	201
Mass changing position a half-Right	19	202

PART IX.

PISTOL DRILL AND ACCOUTREMENTS.

The Webley Pistol, Mark VI.

Action of the Mechanism	1	204
Pistol Drill	2	205
Inspection of Pistols	3	207
Pistol Instruction	4	207

Pistol Accoutrements.

Mills' Web Pistol Equipment	5	208
-----------------------------	---	-----

PART X.

FIELD GUN DRILL.

Description of Gun and Limber and Names of Parts to be referred to in the drill	1	216
Detailing a Gun's Crew	2	217
Form the Order of March	3	217
Change Rounds	4	217
Gun's Crew to the front, right, left or rear	5	218
Duties of the more important numbers	6	218
Marching, changing direction and halting	7	218

	Section	Page
Gun back, when limbered up - - -	8	219
Unlimber and limber up - - -	9	221
Ascent of an incline - - -	10	221
Descent of an incline - - -	11	222
Shifting Wheels when unlimbered - - -	12	222
Shifting Wheels when limbered up - - -	13	224
Action front - - -	14	224
Range, deflection, nature of shell, fuze and object - - -	15	226
Stop firing - - -	16	227
Secure - - -	17	227
Reversing in a narrow passage - - -	18	229
Dismount - - -	19	229
Retire with the gear - - -	20	230
Remount - - -	21	230
Removing a Disabled Gun Carriage - - -	22	230
Stores taken with Gun and Limber - - -	23	231
Drill for 12-pdr. 18-cwt. Q.F. Gun on Field Carriage - - -	24	232
Stores taken with 12-pdr. 18-cwt. Gun - - -	25	233
Drill for 4-inch B.L. or Q.F. Guns on Steel Field Carriage - - -	26	234
Stores taken with a 4-inch Field Gun - - -	27	235
Missfires - - -	28	236

PART XI. BATTERY DRILL.

Organisation and General Rules - - -	1	237
Signals for a Field Battery - - -	2	238
Posts of Officers - - -	3	241

Movements of a Battery.

Assembly - - -	4	242
Telling off a Battery - - -	5	242
Dressing in Line - - -	6	242
Advancing in Line - - -	7	244
Wheeling in Line - - -	8	244
Inclining - - -	9	244
Diminishing and increasing intervals - - -	10	244
Retiring in Line - - -	11	245
Forming Column to a flank from Line - - -	12	248
Forming Column of route to a flank from Line - - -	13	248

	Section	Page
Deploying from Column or Column of route into Line - - -	14	248
Advancing in Column from Line - - -	15	248
Advancing in Column of route from Line - - -	16	249
Advancing in Echelon from the centre, or flank, from line at the Halt - - -	17	249
Review of a Field Battery - - -	18	250

PART XII. MACHINE GUN DRILL.

Position of Gun and Stores - - -	1	253
Falling in - - -	2	253
Numbering - - -	3	253
Changing rounds - - -	4	253
Taking Post - - -	5	253
Signals - - -	6	254
Action - - -	7	254
Fire - - -	8	255
Changing Magazines - - -	9	255
Stop - - -	10	256
Cease firing - - -	11	256

PART XIII. GUIDES AND DIRECTING FLANK, AND DRILL FOR MARKERS.

Parade Ground Movements.

Table of Guides - - -	1	257
Directing Flank on the March - - -	2	258
Procedure on changing directing Flank - - -	3	258
Dressing at the Halt - - -	4	259
Ceremonial Drill - - -	5	259

Drill for Markers.

Throwing out Markers - - -	6	260
Covering the Markers - - -	7	261

PART XIV.

CEREMONIAL, PARADES, REVIEWS, THE KING'S
COLOUR, GUARDS, &c.

	Section	Page
General Rules	1	262
"Falling in" preparatory to "Sizing," "Prov- ing," "Dressing," &c.	2	265
Sizing a Unit	3	267
Proving a Unit	4	269
Fixing and Unfixing Bayonets	5	270
Dressing	6	271
Reviews and Inspections	7	272
Firing a Feu-de-Joie	8	276
Marching Past:—		
Platoon Marching Past	9	280
Company—General Rules	10	281
Company marching past in Column	11	281
Company marching past in "Close Column"		
after marching past in Column	12	283
Company marching past in "Close Column"	13	285
Company marching past in "Column,"		
"Close Column after marching past in		
Column," or in "Close Column," using		
Double Platoons	14	286
Company marching past in Line	15	286
Company marching past in "Column of		
fours" or in "Column of Route"	16	287
Battalion—General Rules	17	287
Battalion marching past in column	18	287
Battalion marching past in Close Column		
after marching past in Column	19	289
Battalion marching past in Close Column	20	290
Battalion marching past in "Column of Com- panies in line"	21	291
Battalion marching past in "Close Column of Companies in Line" after marching past in "Column of Companies in Line"	22	293
Battalion marching past in "Column of Fours" or "Column of Route"	23	294
Brigade—General Rules	24	295

Marching Past—continued.

	Section	Page
Brigade marching past by Battalions in "Column of Companies in Line"	25	295
Brigade marching past by Battalions in "Close Column of Companies in Line"		
after marching past by Battalions in "Column of Companies in Line"	26	297
"Advancing in Review Order"	27	298
Positions of Officers and Gunner's Mates, &c. in the various formations	28	300

The King's Colour.

General Instructions	29	319
Position of the King's Colour	30	322
Receiving the King's Colour	31	324
Returning the King's Colour	32	327

Ceremonial Guards.

General Remarks	33	328
Compliments paid by Ceremonial Guards	34	329
Inspection of a Ceremonial Guard	35	329
Strength of Ceremonial Guards	36	331

Lining the Streets.

General Remarks	37	331
Procedure for Lining the Streets	38	333

Miscellaneous.

Dress on Ceremonial Occasions	39	333
London parties	40	335
Landing of the White Ensign	41	335

LIST OF PLATES.

Plate.

1. Position of "Attention."
2. Man at "Attention" making a "Front Salute."
3. Off—Caps (3 positions).
4. Formation of fours.
5. Names of the Parts of a Rifle.
6. Position of "Order arms" (Drill Order).
7. Position of "Slope arms."
8. Position of "Present arms."
9. Unfixing bayonets.
10. Position of "Port arms."
11. Piling arms.
12. Position of "High Port."
13. & } Saluting with arms (2 positions).
14. }
15. Marching order (rigged).
16. Marching order (unrigged).
17. Musketry order.
18. Fatigue order.
19. Marching order without pack.
20. Marching order (front).
21. Marching order (back).
22. Marching order (side).
23. Marching order (side).
24. Position of "Load."
25. Position of "Firing—Standing."
26. Position of "Firing—Lying."
27. Position of "Firing—Sitting."
28. Position of "Firing—Kneeling."
29. Position of "Attention" with the sword sheathed.
30. Position of "Stand Easy" with the sword.
31. Position of "Stand at Ease" with the sword.
32. Marching with the sword sheathed.
33. Position of "Carry" with the sword.
34. Position of "Recover" with the sword.
35. Position of "Slope" with the sword.
36. Saluting on the march with the sword (4 positions).
37. Position of "Reverse" with the sword.
38. Names of parts of a Cutlass.

Plate.

39. Inspection of Cutlasses.
40. Funeral Party before moving off to the right.
41. Names of parts of a pistol (Webley Mk. VI).
42. Position of "Ready" with the pistol.
43. Firing position with the pistol.
44. Pistol equipment (instructional drawings).
45. Pistol equipment (Front).
46. Pistol equipment (Side).
47. Pistol equipment (Back).
48. Instructional drawing.
49. } Conversion of Pistol Equipment into Rifle Equipment.
50. }
51. 8-cwt. Field Gun and limber.
52. 8-cwt. Field Gun and limber.
53. Manning the handspike.
54. Field Gun's crew in action.
55. Reversing in a narrow passage.
56. Removing a disabled gun carriage.
57. Limber boxes.
58. Machine Gun in action.

DEFINITIONS.

Alignment:—Any straight line on which a body of men is formed, or is to form.

Battalion:—Headquarters and two or more companies.

Brigade:—Headquarters and two or more battalions.

Close column:—A column with distances reduced to suit requirements. If no specific orders are given, the distance between platoons will be seven paces.

Column:—Bodies of men on parallel and successive alignments, at a distance from one another equal to their own frontage, *e.g.*, column of companies or column of platoons.

Column distance:—With platoons of normal strength, Column distance is $12\frac{1}{2}$ paces.

Column of masses:—See under masses.

Column of route:—A column of fours with not more than four men abreast in any part of the column, including officers and supernumeraries. The normal formation for men marching on a road.

Company:—An administrative unit consisting of four platoons.

Covering:—The act of one or more men placing themselves correctly in rear of one another.

Deploy, to:—To change formation from column or close column into line on the same alignment.

Depth:—The space occupied by a body of men from front to rear.

Directing the March:—The officer or man who verifies and, if necessary, corrects the direction of motion of the unit or sub unit and who also gives the step, is said to direct the march.

Direction, Sub Unit of:—The sub unit whose commander is the unit guide. Used in Field Movements only.

Distance:—The space between corresponding points of sub units or between individual men measured along the direction of advance of the unit.

Double column:—Two parallel columns, with any named interval between them.

Dress, to:—To take up the alignment correctly.

Drill:—The training of men to execute certain movements as a second nature.

File:—A front rank man and his rear rank man.

Fire unit:—Any number of men firing by the executive command of one. The section is the normal fire unit.

Flank, directing:—The flank by which units march or dress.

Flank, inner:—That flank of a sub unit which is nearer to the directing flank of the unit.

Flank, outer:—That flank of a sub unit which is further from the directing flank of the unit.

Formation (Battalion, company, platoon, section, or file of):—The battalion, company, platoon, section or file on which a change of formation is based.

Frontage:—The extent of ground covered laterally by men.

Guides:—Those officers or men by whom the remainder of the men in their unit or sub unit march and dress.

In action (of a machine gun):—A machine gun is said to be in action when it is mounted, loaded, and laid, not necessarily firing.

Incline:—The movement by which ground is gained to the front and flank simultaneously.

Interval:—The space between corresponding points of sub units or between individual men measured at right angles to the direction of advance of the units.

Interval, deploying:—The lateral space between units in close column or in column, on the same alignment, the space being equal to the frontage of a unit in line.

Line:—Men formed on the same alignment.

Markers:—Officers or men who are placed so as to indicate the position which a unit will occupy on falling in or on the completion of any movement.

Mass:—A battalion with its companies in line of close columns of platoons, with five paces interval between companies and seven paces distance between platoons.

Mass, open:—A battalion with its companies in line of columns of platoons, with five paces interval between companies.

Masses, column of:—Battalions in mass, on parallel and successive alignments, with any named distance between battalions.

Masses, line of:—A line of battalions in mass, with ten paces interval between the battalions.

Patrol:—A body of men sent out to reconnoitre or to guard against surprise.

Pivot flank:—The flank on which a unit pivots when changing front.

Pivot guide:—A guide on the pivot flank of a unit.

Position, change of:—A movement by which a body of men takes up a new alignment.

Rank:—A line of men, side by side.

Right (or Left) Flank:—That portion of a unit or sub unit which, were the unit or sub unit to advance, would lie on the right (or left) hand.

Squad:—A small body of men formed for drill.

Sub Unit:—Any one of the component bodies forming a unit, *e.g.*, unit, battalion—sub unit; company; unit, company—sub unit, platoon.

Sub Unit Guides:—The guides of sub units. They march and dress on the unit guide.

Supernumeraries:—The signalmen, &c., forming the third rank.

Unit:—A term which denotes a number of men organised to act as one body.

A Unit is said to be advancing when moving in the direction that the front rank is facing or would face if it were in line.

A Unit is said to be Retiring when moving in such a direction that the rear rank is leading or would be leading if the unit were formed into line.

A Unit Moving to a Flank is moving in a direction at right angles to its direction of advance.

Unit Guide:—The guide by which sub unit guides march and dress. It is his duty to select points to march on.

Wheeling:—A movement by which a body of men brings forward a flank on a fixed or moving pivot.

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS.

DISCIPLINE.

The word discipline indicates a state of affairs, such that a body of men of various ranks, ages, and inclinations are capable of acting together as a combined whole.

For this to be possible, not only is it necessary that there should be immediate, loyal, and unquestioning obedience to superiors, but also mutual reliance between all ranks and between comrades, no one doubting that the officers will lead or fearing that comrades will lag behind.

In order that the machine thus created shall be flexible and capable of resisting destruction from external causes, it is essential that there should be devolution of authority and confidence reposed in subordinates, binding all ranks together, and at the same time teaching self-reliance and initiative.

This state of discipline is not an innate instinct, and, therefore, has to be created and maintained in peace in order that the advantages produced may operate in war.

Discipline in peace spells health and happiness, without which efficiency is impossible; efficiency in peace spells success in war.

DRILL.

The chief prop of discipline is drill, for although of itself of little fighting value, its utility as a means of exercising officers and men in instant obedience cannot be overestimated. The obedience thus enforced gradually becomes an instinct strong enough to overcome feelings of personal discomfort, and desire for self-preservation, even under wearisome trials, and in the face of catastrophe.

To produce an instinct of the necessary strength it is essential to take advantage of every moment of the day; and training must not, therefore, be restricted to drill hours. Hence the necessity for a strict routine,

irksome unless the reason for it is understood, which regulates the time for every duty, every detail of dress, &c.

Such a system, while teaching obedience, increases in the individual respect for his ship, for his comrades, and for himself.

From the above, it follows that drill must be considered from two aspects, firstly as a valuable disciplinary exercise, and, secondly, as a means whereby bodies of men can be moved quickly about in an orderly manner. To obtain full advantage from this form of training this double purpose must never be lost sight of, and consequently the first essential of drill is that it should be carried out with the utmost accuracy.

To attain this, officers should place themselves so that their men can hear orders, and where they can see the same carried out.

Words of Command.

Every command that consists of one word must be preceded by a caution; the caution, or cautionary part of a command, must be given slowly and distinctly; the last or executive part, which, in general, should consist of only one word or syllable, must be given sharply and quickly; as,

Com̄pāny—Hāl̄t : Rīght Īn-clīne.

A pause of one second is to be made between the caution and the executive word of command, except on the march, when the pause should be regulated by the cadence of the pace as laid down in Part I., Section 9, paragraphs 2 and 3.

Officers and petty officers should frequently be practised in giving words of command.

Slovenly and indistinct words of command result in slackness and hesitation on the part of the men.

Men who have been taught to move smartly and accurately, quickly learn to carry out any drill manœuvres.

The habit of acting simultaneously with a defined object which is engendered amongst a body of men by steady drill, renders combined movements, in loose formations, easy of attainment.

The position of attention has great disciplinary value and should be practised as a distinct item of drill; it should not be ordered for long periods or when exactness cannot be expected and insisted upon; for instance, when explanations are being given them, men should "*stand at ease*." If it is intended to rest the men and permit them to move about, the order "**Stand Easy**" should be given.

Method of Instruction in Field Training.

Field Training Instructors must appreciate that a thorough knowledge of their subject is the first essential towards an ability to teach it. Without this they can never do themselves justice, for a lack of knowledge in the instructor soon becomes apparent to the class and causes a resultant flag in their confidence and interest.

Given knowledge, however, it does not even then follow that the instructor is able to impart it to his class; to achieve this it is imperative that the method of teaching employed by him is on sound psychological lines based on modern experience.

The accepted most efficient method of teaching field training, and one which all instructors would do well to follow, may be summarised in these four words:—

DEMONSTRATION.
EXPLANATION.
IMITATION.
INTERROGATION.

A brief outline of this method of teaching is as follows:

The instructor, with a new class, first **demonstrates** exactly what actions he is to teach. His own performance must be accurate, smart and complete, and such as to arouse in the class a desire to be able to

do this new thing as well as he does. He repeats the demonstration as many times as may be necessary for the class to grasp all the details of his action, but he gives no explanations or cautions of any sort.

He now **explains** to the class what was done, how it was done and why it was done. His explanations must be carefully and well prepared. They must be brief, logical, and show clearly the purpose of each detail. They must be simple, original and interesting, and given in a voice audible to the whole class and without shouting.

In the demonstration, the instructor appealed to the eye; in the explanation, he appeals to the ear.

The third stage is that of **imitation**. Here each member of the class attempts to carry out the new action himself, and it is here that the instructor has the best chance of picking up mistakes and removing difficulties. This third stage is perhaps the most important of all, for a man will not learn by watching the instructor's demonstration, nor by hearing his explanation, but by trying himself to put the instructor's principles into practice.

When each member of the class has become moderately proficient, the instructor **questions** them on what has been done. This not only gives the class a temporary relief from drill, but it also tests the soundness of the instructor's teaching and the thoroughness of the class's learning. Systematic questioning is a test of the instructor's ability to impart knowledge, and is also a good means of securing the attention of the class, since knowing they are to be tested in this way will tend to keep them more alert.

While the wording of the Drill Book is probably more concise and accurate, yet instructors should cultivate the gift of being able to describe motions and practices in their own words. The instructor who tries to teach by reciting the details from the book will never be so successful as the instructor who uses his own, albeit slightly more clumsy words.

PART I.

SQUAD DRILL.

SQUAD DRILL WITH INTERVALS.

1. FORMATION OF A SQUAD.

A few men will be placed in single rank at arm's length apart; while so formed they will be termed a *squad with intervals*. If necessary, the squad may consist of two ranks, in which case the men in the rear rank will cover the intervals between the men in the front rank, so that in marching they may take their own points to march on. Men formed into a squad will be directed to observe the relative places they hold with each other; while resting between the exercise they will be permitted to fall out and move about; they will be instructed, on the word *Fall in* to go to their places and *Stand at Ease*.

2. POSITION OF ATTENTION. (Plates 1 and 2.)

Atten—tion. Heels together and in line. Feet turned out at an angle of about 45 degrees. Knees straight. Body erect; shoulders level and square to the front, down and moderately back. Arms hanging easily from the shoulders as straight as the natural bend of the arm when the muscles are relaxed will allow, but with the hands level with the centre of the thighs. Wrists straight. Palms of the hands turned towards the thighs, hands partially closed, backs of fingers touching the thigh lightly, thumb close to forefinger. Neck erect.



Position of "Attention."

Head balanced evenly on the neck, and not poked forward, eyes looking their own height and straight to the front. The weight of the body should be balanced on both feet, and evenly distributed between the forepart of the feet, and the heels. The breathing must not in any way be restricted and no part of the body should be either drawn in or pushed out. Exactness in this position is one of great importance; men should not therefore be at *Attention* oftener or longer than is necessary.

3. STANDING AT EASE.

Stand at—Ease. Keeping the legs straight, carry the left foot about one foot-length to the left so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet, at the same time carry the hands behind the back, and place the back of one hand in the palm of the other, grasping it lightly with the fingers and thumb, and allowing the arms to hang easily at their full extent. (It is immaterial which hand grasps the other.)

Note (i) When a Seaman falls in for instruction, he will stand at ease after taking up his dressing by the right.

Note (ii) In marching order without the rifle the arms will be retained as in the position of *Attention*.

Squad, Spring to the position described in
Atten—tion. Section 2.

Standing Easy.

Stand—Easy. Men will be permitted to move their limbs but without quitting their ground, so that on coming to *Attention* there will be no loss of dressing.

Note.—If the command *Stand—Easy* is given to seamen at *Attention*, they will *Stand at Ease* and after a pause *Stand—Easy*. Seamen *Standing Easy* who receive a caution such as *Squad, Platoon, &c.*, will assume the position of *Stand at Ease*.

If the caution is followed by an executive word of command, *e.g.*, *Quick—March*, the seamen will first come to *Attention* and then carry out the order received.

4. DRESSING A SQUAD WITH INTERVALS.

With Intervals, Right—Dress. Each man, except the right-hand man, turns his head and eyes to the right, extends his right arm, back of the hand upwards, finger tips touching the shoulder of the man on his right, and takes up his dressing in line by moving, with short quick steps, till he is just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him.

Eyes—Front. The head and eyes are turned smartly to the front, the arm brought to the side, and the position of *Attention*, as described in Section 2, resumed.

A line will similarly be dressed by the left.

5. NUMBERING.

Number. The right-hand man of the rank calls one, the next man two, and so on in succession to the left, the numbers being called sharply.

When in two ranks each rear rank man will note the number of his respective front rank man.

6. TURNINGS.

By numbers, Right—Turn. Keeping both knees straight and the body erect, turn to the right on the right heel and left toe, raising the left heel and right toe in doing so.

Two. Bring the left heel smartly up to the right without stamping the foot on the ground.

Right—Turn. Turn smartly as above, observing the two distinct movements.

Left—Turn. As above on the left heel and right toe.



Man at "Attention" making a "Front Salute."

About—Turn. Turn fully about to the right, as described for the Right Turn, by numbers or by judging the time as required.

By numbers, As described for turning to the right
Right (or Left) (or left), but turning only half right (or
In—cline. left).

Two. As described for turning to the right (or left).

Right (or Left) In—cline. As above, but judging the time.

7. SALUTING. (Plate 2.)

By numbers, Raise the right hand smartly but
Front—Salute. naturally, the palm of the hand being to the left, but inclined slightly inwards, so that the eyes on glancing up can see the inside of the palm, the thumb and fingers being closed together, elbow in line with the shoulder, hand and forearm in line, fingers touching the rim of the cap or hat.

Two. Drop the right hand smartly to the side.

By numbers, Raise the right hand as described
to the Right above; turn the head and shoulders
(or Left)—Salute, towards the person saluted.

Two. Drop the right hand smartly to the side; turn the head and shoulders to the front.

Note.—The salute is always to be made with the right hand.

Saluting other than with the Hand.

Eyes—Right Turn the head and eyes smartly to the
(or Left). right (or left).

Eyes—Front. Turn the head and eyes smartly to the front.

Notes.—(i) Men will salute all officers. Junior officers will salute their superiors.

(ii)—(a) When two or more officers together are saluted, the senior officer only will return the salute.

(b) When two or more officers together pass or are passed by a superior they all will salute.

(iii) When two or more men (not fallen in) pass or are passed by an officer, they will each salute.

(iv) When an officer or man passes a superior, he will salute on the third pace before reaching him, and will lower the hand on the third pace after passing him.

(v) Officers or men if standing about or sitting when a superior approaches, will rise, stand to attention, and make a front salute.

(vi) An officer or man, without his cap, or when carrying anything that prevents him from saluting with the right hand will, if standing still, stand to attention and face the superior as he passes; if walking, he will turn the head smartly towards the superior on passing him.

(vii) An officer or man when riding a bicycle or driving a motor vehicle will salute, subject to traffic conditions permitting, by turning the head smartly towards the superior officer.

(viii) A man without his cap never salutes with the hand.

(ix) An officer carrying a stick will salute with the right hand, passing the stick into the left hand if necessary.

(x) A seaman carrying a stick as sentry or orderly, will salute as in Note (i), the stick being placed horizontally under the left arm, the left hand hanging at the side, as in the position of attention.

(xi) Officers wearing a sword will salute with the right hand.

(xii) Officers or seamen passing troops with uncased standards or colours, will salute the standards or colours, and the Commanding Officer (if senior). Cased colours are not saluted.

(xiii) Officers or seamen passing a funeral will salute the body.

(xiv) In civilian clothing the salute will be made by raising the hat or cap. Officers will be saluted whether they are in uniform or not.

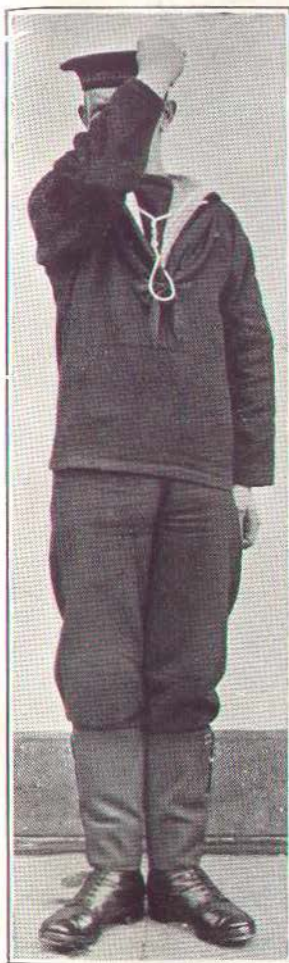


Fig. i.



Fig. ii.

Off—Caps.



Fig. iii.
Off—Caps.

8. TAKING OFF AND PUTTING ON CAPS OR HATS.

(Plate 3, Fig. i, ii and iii.)

By numbers, Seize the cap with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand just above the left ear, back of the hand to the front.

Off—Caps. Resume the position of *Attention* with the cap in the right hand, the name of the ship being to the front.

By numbers, } Replace the cap with the right hand.
On—Caps. }

Two. Resume the position of *Attention*. In quick time combine the two motions.

Standing at Ease with Caps off.

Caps to be held behind the back, crown to the rear, both hands holding the rim at the bow (or peak). At the caution "Squad" seize the cap at the crown (or peak) with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand.

At the order **Atten—tion** bring the cap to the right side, name to the front.

MARCHING.

9. LENGTH OF PACE, TIME AND POSITION.

1. *Length of Pace.*—In slow and quick time the length of pace is 30 inches. In stepping out, it is 33 inches, in double time, 40, in stepping short, 21, and the side step, 14 inches. When a man takes a side pace to clear or cover another, as in forming fours, &c., the pace will be of 27 inches.

2. *Time.*—In slow time, 75 paces are taken in a minute. In quick time, 120 paces, equal to 100 yards in a minute. In double time, 180 paces, equal to 200 yards a minute. The time of the side step is the same as for the quick step.

3. *Words of Command on the March.*—The following table shows when to give the words of Command to men on the move during Close Order drill.

- | | | |
|---|-------|--|
| (1) About—Turn | - - - | The "Cautionary Order" should be given as the <i>Right</i> foot comes to the ground. |
| (2) Right—Turn | - - - | |
| (3) Right In—cline | - - - | |
| (4) Right—Form | - - - | |
| (5) Form—Fours | - - - | |
| (6) Form—Two deep | - - - | |
| (7) Form—Squad (or Platoon) | - - - | |
| (8) Slow—March | - - - | |
| (from the Quick—March). | | The "Order" should be given the next time the <i>Right</i> foot comes to the Ground. |
| (9) Quick—March | - - - | |
| (from the Slow—March). | | |
| (10) Double—March | - - - | |
| (from the Quick—March). | | |
| (11) All orders relating to movements of the Rifle when on the march; also orders for saluting with the sword on the march. | | |
| (12) Mark—Time | - - - | |
| (13) Quick—March | - - - | |
| (from the Double—March). | | |
| (14) Squad (Platoon, &c.)— Halt | | |
| (15) Left—Turn | - - - | The "Cautionary Order" as the <i>Left</i> foot comes to the Ground. |
| (16) Left In—cline | - - - | |
| (17) Left—Form | - - - | |
| | | The "Order" next time the <i>Left</i> foot comes to the ground. |

Note.—To move off a Unit (or Sub Unit) in step with a preceding Unit (or Sub Unit) the Command "**Quick**" ("Double" or "Slow") should be given as the *Right* feet of the Unit (or Sub Unit) come to the ground, the Command "**March**" being given the next time the *Right* feet come to the ground.

4. *Position.*—In marching, a man will maintain the position of the head and body as directed in Section 2. He must be well balanced on his limbs. In slow time

his arms and hands must be kept steady by his sides. In quick time the arms should swing naturally from the shoulder.

The foot should be carried straight to the front, and, without being drawn back, placed firmly upon the ground with the knee straight, but so as not to jerk the body.

Although several men may be drilled together in a squad with intervals, they must act independently, precisely as if they were being instructed singly. They will thus learn to march in a straight line, and to take a correct pace, both as regards length and time, without reference to the other men of the squad.

Before the squad is put in motion, the instructor will take care that each man is square to the front and in correct line with the remainder. Each man will be taught to take a point straight to his front, by fixing his eyes upon some distant object, and then observing some nearer point in the same straight line, such as a stone, tuft of grass, or other object. The same procedure will be followed by the man on the named flank or by the named number, when marching in other formations (see Section 23).

10. MARCHING IN QUICK TIME.

Quick—March. The squad will step off together with a full pace of 30 inches, with the left foot, in quick time.

11. MARCHING IN SLOW TIME.

Slow—March. The men will step off and march as described for **Quick—March**, but in slow time, and keeping the arms and hands steady to the side.

12. THE HALT.

Squad—Halt. The command **Halt** will be given as the right foot comes to the ground, the left foot will complete its pace, and the right foot will be brought smartly in line with it without stamping.

13. STEPPING OUT.

Step—Out. The moving foot will complete its pace, and the man will lengthen the pace by 3 inches, leaning forward a little, but without altering the time.

Note.—This step is used when a slight increase of speed, without an alteration of time, is required; on the command **Quick—March** the usual pace will be resumed.

14. STEPPING SHORT.

Step—Short. The foot advancing will complete its pace, after which the pace will be shortened by 9 inches until the command **Quick—March** is given, when the quick step will be resumed.

15. MARKING TIME.

Mark—Time. The order **Mark—Time** will be given as the right foot comes to the ground. The left foot will complete its pace, after which the time will be continued, without advancing, by raising each foot alternately about 6 inches, keeping the feet almost parallel with the ground, the knees raised to the front, the arms steady at the sides, and the body steady.

For—ward. The pace at which the men were moving will be resumed.

At the halt, the word of command will be **Quick Mark—Time**.

The Halt.

A Squad “Marking Time” and required to “Halt.”

Squad—Halt. The command “Halt” will be given as the right foot comes to the ground, and the “Halt” will be completed in two Mark-time paces.

16. CHANGING STEP WHEN ON THE MARCH.

Change—Step. The advancing foot will complete its pace, and the ball of the rear foot will be brought up to the heel of the advanced one, which will make another step forward, so that the time will

not be lost, two successive steps being taken with the same foot.

Note.—When marking time, make two successive beats with the same foot.

17. MARCHING IN DOUBLE TIME.

Double—March. Step off with the left foot with a full pace of 40 inches and double on the toes, inclining the body slightly forward, head erect. The heels must not be raised towards the seat. The arms should swing easily from the shoulders, but not across the body, the forearm making an angle of about 135 degrees with the upper arm, fists clenched.

Squad—Halt. As in Section 12 (but to be completed in 4 paces) at the same time dropping the hands, and assuming the position of attention.

(*Notes.*—(i) A squad advancing at the *Quick* and receiving the order *Double—March* will complete one pace at the *Quick* after receiving the order and then break into the double.

(ii) A squad advancing at the *Double* and receiving the order *Quick—March* will check the way of the body in the three paces after the order, the fourth pace being at the *Quick*.

(iii) *Double Mark Time* as for *Double—March*, but without advancing, the feet being raised 6 inches clear of the ground.

(iv) Changing step at the double. Take one pace after the order and then take two successive steps with the same foot without losing the cadence.

18. STEPPING FORWARD AND BACKWARD.

—Paces, Forward Each man will step forward or backward the number of paces ordered, commencing with the left foot.
(or Step Back)
—March. Length of pace to be 30 inches.
 Position of the body to be the same as when marching, except that the arms and hands are to be kept steady by the sides.

Men should not be ordered to take more than four paces forward or backward.

19. THE SIDE STEP.

Right (or Left)
Close—March,

or

—Paces, Right
(or Left)

Close—March.

Each man carries his right (or left) foot 14 inches direct to the right (or left) and closes his left (or right) foot to it, thus completing the pace; he will proceed to take the next pace in the same manner. Shoulders to be kept square, knees straight, unless on rough or broken ground, the direction must be kept in a straight line to the flank.

Squad—Halt. The command **Halt** will be given when the number of paces has not been specified. This order should be given at the moment that the leading foot comes to the ground. The men will complete the pace they are taking and remain steady.

Men should not usually be moved to a flank by the side step more than 12 paces.

20. TURNING WHEN ON THE MARCH.

Right (or Left)—Turn. Turn on the left (or right) foot without checking the pace.

Right (or Left) In—cline. Turn half right (or left) and move on in a diagonal direction, without checking the pace.

About—Turn. Each man turns about on his own ground in three paces. The fourth pace will be a full pace of 30 inches.

Note.—The proper execution of the turnings on the march depends entirely on the way in which the word of command is given, *e.g.*, in turning to the right the caution **Right** is given as the right foot comes to the ground, and the executive order **Turn** when the right foot comes to the ground next time. The next pace (left foot) will be in the original direction for the purpose

of checking the way of the body. The body is now turned and a full pace taken with the right foot in the new direction. In turning "*about*" the cautionary and executive orders are given on two successive beats of the right foot. The next pace will be a full pace to the old front with the left foot, the turn being made during the next three paces, the fourth pace being a full pace with the left foot in the new direction. Whilst the turn is being made the man will remain as on the same ground, the knees being raised in marking time and the arms kept by the side.

SQUAD DRILL IN SINGLE RANK.

21. FORMATION OF SQUAD.

Each man is allowed a space of 27 inches, whether armed and fully equipped or not.

The right-hand or left-hand man being first placed, the remainder fall in one after the other in line with him. Each man should be able to swing his arms naturally and freely without interfering with the man on either side of him. A squad when they fall in will dress by the right unless otherwise ordered, except immediately after a change of formation, when they dress by the flank of formation.

22. DRESSING IN SINGLE RANK.

If it be necessary to correct the dressing, the command **By the Right (or Left)—Dress** will be given.

By the Right (or Left)—Dress. Each man, except the man on the named flank, will look towards the flank by which he is to dress with a smart turn of the head and, commencing with the man nearest the flank by which the dressing is made, will move up or back to his place successively until he can just see the lower part of the face of the second man from him. Each man in succession from the directing flank will look to his front as soon as he has got his dressing. (*See Section 32.*)

23. MARCHING IN SQUAD.

Before a squad is ordered to march, the directing flank or man must be indicated by the caution, **By the Right (By the Left)** or **(By No. —)**. Each man will preserve his position in the general alignment by an occasional glance towards the directing flank, or man.

By the Right (or Left), Quick—March. The man on the flank, or the named number, according to the caution, selects two distance points in line to march on. The remainder of the squad march on him.

By occasionally remaining halted in rear of the directing man, and fixing his eyes on the distant object, the instructor can ascertain if the squad is marching in the original direction.

24. THE DIAGONAL MARCH.

Right (or Left) In—cline, Quick—March. Men will make a right (or left) incline and at the order **Quick—March** will step off and move diagonally in that direction, each regulating his pace so that his own shoulders are parallel with the shoulders of the man on his right (or left).

Halt. As taught in Section 12. If the march has been correctly performed, when the squad are turned into line, they should be correctly dressed.

Left (or Right) In—cline. Turn and move forward in the original direction.

On the March.

Right (or Left) In—cline. Each man will make a right (or left) incline as ordered.

The diagonal march will also be practised in double time. (See Section 20.)

25. CHANGING DIRECTION BY FORMING.

Right—Form. The right-hand man will turn in the required direction, and the remainder make a right incline.

Quick—March. The right-hand man will mark time and the remainder will mark time when they come up into the new alignment, taking up their dressing on the right-hand man.

For—ward. The squad will move forward in the new direction.

Notes.—(i) The squad may be practised forming a Quarter, Half, or Three-quarter Right (or Left).

(ii) Should the squad be required to halt on reaching the new alignment, the command will be preceded by the caution **At the Halt**; each man will then halt and take up his dressing on reaching the new alignment. If the squad is on the move, the command **Quick—March** is omitted.

26. MARCHING IN SINGLE FILE.

Right—Turn. 1. *From the Halt.*—Men will turn Right and when in file must be instructed to cover each other exactly. The head of the man immediately in front of each man, when he is correctly covered, will conceal the heads of all the others before him.

Quick—March. The whole step off together, and continue to step a full pace without increasing or diminishing the distance between each other.

Halt. Left—Turn. The men halt and turn in the required direction. If the marching has been properly performed the dressing will be found correct.

2. Squad advancing or retiring receiving the order **Right (or Left)—Turn** will turn in the required direction and march in file as above.

27. CHANGING DIRECTION IN SINGLE FILE.

Right (or Left)—Wheel. The leading man moves round a quarter of the circumference of a circle having a radius of 4 feet. The other men in succession follow on in his footsteps without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the time, but shortening the pace a little with the inner foot.

If a squad is ordered to halt or mark time when a part of the men only have wheeled into the new direction, the remainder should be instructed to cover off, if required, moving to their places by the shortest route on the command **Rear Files—Cover.**

If the order **For—ward** is given before the wheel is completed, the squad will lead on in the direction in which the leading man is facing.

28. MARCHING IN SINGLE FILE AND FORMING UP INTO SQUAD.

On the Right (or Left), Form—Squad. The leading man marks time, the remainder make a partial turn in the named direction and form upon him, marking time as they come into the alignment, and taking up their dressing on him.

For—ward. By the Left (or Right.) As soon as the squad is formed, the Command **For—ward** will be given.

If it is intended to halt at the place where the movement is commenced, the caution **At the Halt** will be given and the leading man will halt instead of marking time, the remainder doing the same as they reach their places and taking up their dressing.

Note.—The squad may be formed obliquely to the line of march by the command **Half (or Quarter) Right (or Left), Form—Squad.**

29. FORMING TWO DEEP FROM SINGLE RANK.

On the Right (or Left), Form—Two-deep. The squad being fallen in, in single rank, will be numbered from right to left. The even numbers step back two paces.

March. The named flank man of the even numbers will cover off the flank man. The remainder will close in on the named flank with the side step until each man occupies a space of 27 inches in the ranks, and pick up their dressing by the named flank.

30. FORMING SINGLE RANK FROM TWO DEEP.

From the Right (or Left), Form Single Rank.—A caution.

March. The front rank man on the named flank stands fast. The remainder step off away from the named flank with the side step. Each rear-rank man comes up on the left of his front-rank man. Each man halts as he arrives in his position in single rank. The whole pick up their dressing on the named flank.

Note.—When forming single rank from the left, in order that the rear-rank men may come up on the left of their front-rank men, the left-hand man of the rear rank, must take two side paces to the left and then two paces forward; the second man from the left of the rear rank must stand fast until there is room for him and then take two paces forward.

SQUAD DRILL IN TWO RANKS.

31. FORMATION OF A SQUAD IN TWO RANKS.

The squad will now be formed for drill in two ranks. The men will take their places in succession, commencing from the right unless they are ordered to form on the other flank, each occupying a lateral space of 27 inches. Each man of the rear rank will be placed 60 inches from the man in front of him, measuring from heel to heel, and will cover him correctly, the two men thus placed forming a *File*. When the squad consists of an uneven

number of men the third man from the left of the front rank will be a *Blank* (or incomplete) *File*; that is, he will have no rear-rank man. Squads will dress by the right unless otherwise ordered. The instructions for dressing by the right in the following section may be varied so as to apply to dressing by the left.

Note.—When necessary, on board a ship, or in any confined space, the ranks may fall in 30 inches apart instead of 60, being opened out to 60 inches when necessary to perform movements such as **Form—Fours**, &c.; similarly the space for each man, if without arms and accoutrements, may be reduced to 24 inches.

32. DRESSING.

By the Right Both the ranks will take up their
(or **Left**) dressing as taught in Section 22. The
—**Dress.** rear rank must cover off the front rank.

33. NUMBERING A SQUAD.

Squad— The men of the front rank will number off
Number. smartly as in Section 5. Each rear-rank man will listen to the number given by his front-rank man, which number will also be his own.

34. OPENING AND CLOSING A SQUAD.

Open Ranks The odd numbers of the front rank will
—**March.** step forward two paces, the even numbers of the rear rank will step back two paces; as soon as the paces are completed the men who have moved (except the right-hand man of each of the four ranks) will look to the right and correct the dressing quickly, looking to the front as soon as the dressing is correct.

Reform The odd numbers of the front rank will
Ranks— step back two paces, the even numbers of
March. the rear rank will step forward two paces, and, as soon as the paces are completed, the squad will dress by the right.

Note.—The order **Open Ranks—March** may be given to men in single rank, who will then act as a front rank.

35. CHANGING RANKS.

When a squad turns about, the ranks are thereby changed, *i.e.*, the former rear rank becomes the front rank, the former front rank the rear rank.

The exception is when it is required to fall back for a short distance only, with a view of again turning in the original direction. The command **About—Turn** is then preceded by the caution **Squad will retire.**

Blank File.—A blank file will always be with the leading rank. He will move up into his place on the words **About—Turn** at the halt, or will step out to take his place in the leading rank when the squad is turned about on the march.

36. MARCHING IN SQUAD AND IN FILE.

A squad in two ranks will be practised in the marches and variations of step taught in single rank.

Covering and Distance.—While marching, the men of the rear rank must accurately preserve their covering and distance both in line and in file.

37. DIAGONAL MARCH.

Right (or **Left**) **In—cline.** As in Section 24. The men of the rear rank will preserve their relative positions with the men of the front rank in order that they may cover correctly when they are again turned into line.

38. CHANGING DIRECTION IN LINE.

A squad will change direction according to the instructions laid down in Section 25. The rear rank will not turn on the caution, but in forming will conform to the movements of the front rank.

39. CHANGING DIRECTION IN FILE.

Right (or Left)—Wheel. The inner man of the leading file will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle having a radius of 4 feet, stepping short to enable the outer man of the file to wheel with him. When the quarter circle is completed the file leads on in the new direction. The other files in succession will follow in the footsteps of the leading file without increasing or diminishing their distance from each other or altering the time.

Rear Files—Cover. If the squad is halted or ordered to mark time before the whole squad has wheeled into the new direction, the files which have not yet wheeled will cover off on those which have, moving to their places by the shortest route.

If the order **For—ward** is given before the wheel is completed, the squad will lead on in the direction in which the leading file is facing.

40. FORMING SQUAD.

On the Right (or Left), Form—Squad. The right-hand man of the leading file if the formation is to the right, or the left-hand man of the leading file if the formation is to the left, will mark time. The remainder will make a partial turn in the named direction and form upon him, marking time as they come into the alignment.

For—ward. By the Left (or Right). The squad will move on in line in the direction in which it was originally marching in file.

Notes.—(i) After forming squad on the right, the left will normally be ordered to direct.

(ii) If desired to halt on completion, the command will be **At the Halt, on the Right (or Left), Form—Squad.** The right or left hand man of the leading file

will halt and the remainder will halt and dress as they reach their places.

(iii) The squad may be formed obliquely to the line of march by the command **Half (or Quarter) Right (or Left), Form—Squad.**

41. FORMING SINGLE FILE FROM FILE.

Advance in Single File, Quick—March. The front-rank man of the leading file will march off followed by his rear-rank man, who will be followed by the front-rank man of the second file and so on.

Notes.—(i) If the squad is marching in file the command will be **Advance in Single File** when the front-rank man of the leading file will lead on, the remainder marking time to get into their places and then following on as described above.

(ii) A squad may similarly advance in single file from fours, forming two deep before advancing.

42. FORMING FILE FROM SINGLE FILE.

Form—Two-deep. The leading man will mark time, the remainder of the squad will regain their positions in file, marking time as they reach their places.

For—ward. The squad will move forward in file.

Note.—If it is desired to halt on completion of the movement, the command will be **At the Halt, Form—Two-Deep**, when the leading man will halt, the remainder halting as they reach their original places in file.

43. FORMATION OF FOURS AND ELEMENTARY TRAINING IN MARCH DISCIPLINE.

1. Column of route is the ordinary marching formation of infantry when they are on a road or performing Field Movements. Column of Fours may be used for Parade Movements, or for moving bodies of men for short distances from one place to another, provided sufficient width of front is available. The greatest attention should be paid to training the man to keep

the prescribed distance from, and to cover exactly, the man in front. Order, comfort, and the reduction of fatigue depend on the maintenance of exact distance by each four. Exact covering and dressing when moving in fours is to be kept even when marching at ease, unless orders to the contrary are issued.

Odd numbers are right files, and even numbers left files.

2. In order that the left four may always be complete, the file on the left of a squad will always act as a left file, and the second file from the left as a right file in forming fours.

3. A test of good marching in fours is the position of the men when they turn into line. If there are no gaps or irregularities in the line, and the squad occupies the same frontage as before it formed fours, the marching is good. This test should be frequently applied during the instruction of men, and the slightest carelessness as regards the maintenance of the exact distance should be checked at once.

4. Units moving in fours will march on the extreme left of roads. The left will always direct and, during halts, men will fall out on the left of the road. It is of great importance when large forces are moving that a portion of the road is kept absolutely clear of units for the passage of traffic and communication of orders, and it is necessary that the seaman should be accustomed from the first to marching in this manner, *e.g.*, when marching to and from the range, when working parties are marching to and from their work, &c.

44. FORMING FOURS. (Plate 4.)

1. *In line in two ranks at the halt.*

Form— The left files will take a pace of 30 inches back with the left foot, and then a side pace of 27 inches with the right, so as to cover their right files. In this formation the squad will stand in fours

FORMATION OF FOURS

Fig. 1
Squad with an Odd File

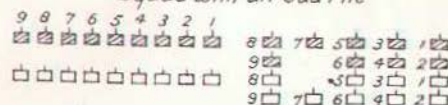


Fig. 2
Squad with a Blank Odd File

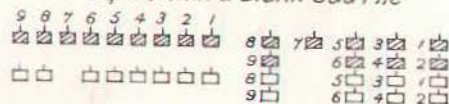


Fig. 3
Squad with a Blank Even File

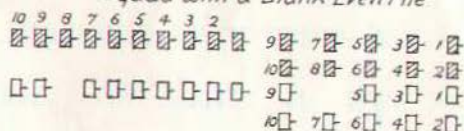
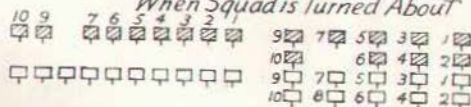


Fig. 4
When Squad is Turned About



Form—Two-deep. The left files will move to their original position in line by taking a side pace of 27 inches with the left foot and a pace forward of 30 inches with the right; or if the squad has been turned about while in fours, a side pace with the right foot and a pace back with the left.

Note.—In forming fours after changing ranks, left files will take a pace of 30 inches to their front with the right foot, and one of 27 inches to the left with the left, thus bringing them into the same relative position as regards right files as they occupy after forming fours in the usual way.

They will form two-deep by taking a side pace with the right foot and a pace back with the left.

2. *To the right or left.*

Form—Fours. As above.

Right. Each man of the squad will turn in the named direction.

Note.—Except during the elementary training of men, the command **Form—Fours, Right** (or **Left**) will, in cases where no other caution is indicated in this Handbook, be preceded by the caution **Move to the Right** (or **Left**) in **Fours**, whether halted or on the march.

3. *To re-form line.*

Left (or **Right**) Each man of the squad will turn in the direction named, and then form
—**Turn.** two-deep, as described above.

Note.—If it is required to remain in fours, the word of command will be **In Fours, Left** (or **Right**)—**Turn.**

4. *When on the march in line.*

Form—Fours. As in 2 and 3, but the right files will mark time two paces, while the left files are moving to their places.
Right.

Note.—Should the command **Right** (or **Left**) **In—cline** be given instead of **Right** (or **Left**), the squad will incline instead of turning in the required direction.

When inclining the squad will remain in fours.

5. *When in file, at the halt or on the march.*

Form— The left files will move forward into their position in fours if a right file is leading, or back if a left file is leading. If on the move, the right files will mark time two paces.

Form— The left files will move up or fall back into their places in file. If on the move, the right files will mark time two paces.

Two-deep.

Note.—When a squad is moving in fours it will march and dress by the front rank side, except in a street or road when it will always march by the left.

45. MOVEMENTS IN FOURS.

1. *Changing direction.*

Right (or Left) Wheel. The inner man of the leading four will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle having a radius of 4 feet, stepping short to enable the other men of the four to wheel with him, he will glance outwards towards the other three men of his section of fours, and they will glance towards him. When the quarter circle is completed, the four lead on in the new direction. The other fours in succession will follow in the footsteps of the leading four without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the time.

Rear Fours—Cover. If the squad is halted or ordered to mark time before the whole squad had wheeled into the new direction, the fours which have not yet wheeled will cover off on those which have, moving to their places by the shortest route.

If the order **For-ward** is given before the wheel is completed, the squad will lead on in the direction in which the leading section of fours is facing.

2. *Forming squad when moving to a flank.*

On the Left (or Right), The squad will first form two deep and will then act as a squad marching in file (see Section 40).

Form—Squad.

For-ward. The squad will move on in line in the direction in which it was originally marching in fours.

Note.—Closing when in fours. When in fours facing the front and it is required to close the fours, the order is **On the Right (or Left), Close—March.** The named section of fours stand fast and the remainder close in on them with the side step till each man occupies 27 inches in the ranks.

Fours may also be closed when on the march to the flank by the order **Mark Time—Rear Fours Close,** when the leading section of fours mark time and the remainder close on them. In turning then the order must always be given **In Fours, Right (or Left)—Turn.**

When fours in close order are marched off to a flank, they regain their proper intervals without orders.

46. OBSTACLES.

Should a squad, marching in line, encounter an obstacle, such as a bush, tree, &c., the file whose way is blocked will mark time until the remainder of the squad have passed the obstacle and will then double round it and resume their positions in the ranks. If, however, a squad (or any larger body of men), moving to a flank in fours, encounters an obstacle, the squad (or any larger body of men) will be wheeled or inclined to avoid the obstacle.

47. DISMISSING WITH OR WITHOUT ARMS.

Dis-miss. The squad will turn to the right, and after a pause, break off quietly, and if on shore, leave the parade ground with sloped arms.

PART II.

RIFLE EXERCISES.

1. GENERAL RULES.

Men before they commence the rifle exercises are to be taught the names of the different parts of the rifle.

The rifle must be carefully handled, especially when fixing or unfixing the bayonet, and when coming to the *Order*. When teaching the rifle exercises, men should be fallen in as taught in Section 21, Part I.

When teaching the motions, the caution **By numbers** should precede the first command (e.g., **By Numbers, Slope—Arms**), when the detail for the first motion only will be performed. The order **Two** is then given.

If the caution **By Numbers** is not given, the first command (e.g., **Slope—Arms**) will order the men to carry out all three motions judging the time.

When teaching *By Numbers* and in *Quick Time*, a good method of assisting the instruction is for men to call the number as they perform each motion.

When practising in quick time, the numbers will not be called.

The interval between the motions of the rifle should be :—

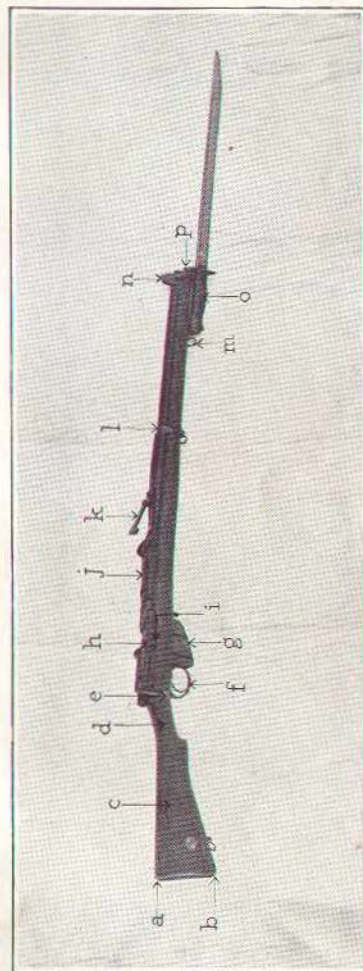
(i) *In quick time*.—One second; except when carrying out movements of the rifle during a "Slow March," when it should be regulated by the cadence of the step.

(ii) *By numbers*.—As requisite to allow the instructor to correct mistakes in the drill.

A—Heel of Butt.
B—Toe of Butt.
C—Butt.
D—Small of Butt.
E—Knob of Bolt.
F—Trigger Guard.

G—Magazine.
H—Bolt.
I—Magazine Cut-off.
J—Hand Guard.
K—Back-sight.
L—Lower Band.

M—Piling Swivel.
N—Upper Band and Foresight.
O—Bayonet Handle.
P—Bayonet Ring.



Names of Parts of a Rifle.



Position of "Order Arms" (Drill Order).

2. THE ORDER. (Plate 6.)

Men will fall in with the rifle held perpendicularly at the right side, the heel of the butt on the ground, its toe in line with the toe of the right foot. The right arm to be slightly bent, the hand to hold the rifle near the lower band, back of the hand to the right, the thumb against the thigh, fingers slanting towards the ground. When each man has got his dressing he will stand at ease.

3. THE STAND AT-EASE FROM THE ORDER (WITH OR WITHOUT BAYONETS FIXED).

Stand at— Incline the muzzle of the rifle slightly to the front with the right hand, arm close to the side, at the same time keeping both legs straight, carry the left foot one foot's length to the left, the left arm steady.

The Attention from Stand at-Ease.

Atten—tion. The left foot will be brought up to the right, and the rifle returned to the *Order*.

Stand Easy from Stand at-Ease.

Stand—Easy. Shift the grasp of the right hand smartly to the piling swivel, wait a distinct pause and assume the *Stand Easy* position.

NOTE.—At the caution "*Squad*," &c., the *Stand-at-ease* position is to be assumed.

4. GROUNDING AND TAKING UP ARMS.

Ground— Place the rifle on the ground at the right side, magazine to the right, muzzle pointing in the same direction as the right foot. The right hand will be in line with the toe as it places the rifle on the ground. Then return smartly to the position of *Attention*.

Take up— Bend down, take up the rifle, and return to the *Order*.

5. THE SLOPE FROM THE ORDER. (Plate 7.)

Slope— Give the rifle a cant upwards with the right hand, catching it with the left hand, at the backsight, and the right hand at the small of the butt, thumb to the left, elbow to the rear.

Two. Carry the rifle across the body, and place it flat on the left shoulder, magazine outwards from the body. Seize the butt with the left hand, the first two joints of the fingers grasping the outside of the butt, the thumb about 1 inch above the toe, the upper part of the left arm close to the side, the lower part horizontal, and the heel of the butt in line with the centre of the left thigh.

Three. Cut away the right hand to the side.

6. THE ORDER FROM THE SLOPE.

Order— Bring the rifle down to the full extent of the left arm, at the same time meeting it with the right hand at the lower band, arm close to the body.

Two. Bring the rifle to the right side, allowing the toe of the butt to turn to the front whilst doing so, seizing it at the same time with the left hand at the nose cap, butt just clear of the ground.

Three. Place the butt quietly on the ground, cutting the left hand away to the side.

7. THE PRESENT FROM THE SLOPE. (Plate 8.)

Present— Seize the rifle with the right hand at the small, both arms close to the body.

Two. Raise the rifle with the right hand perpendicularly in front of the centre of the body, sling to the left; at the same time place the left hand smartly on the stock, wrist on the magazine, fingers pointing upwards, thumb close to the forefinger, point of the thumb in line with the mouth; the left elbow to be close to the butt, the right elbow and butt close to the body.



Position of "Slope Arms."



Position of "Present Arms."

Three. Bring the rifle down perpendicularly close in front of the centre of the body, guard to the front, holding it lightly at the full extent of the right arm, fingers slanting downwards, and meet it smartly with the left hand immediately behind the backsight, thumb pointing towards the muzzle; at the same time place the hollow of the right foot against the left heel, both knees straight. The weight of the rifle to be supported by the left hand.

8. THE SLOPE FROM THE PRESENT.

Slope— Bring the right foot in line with the left
Arms. and place the rifle on the left shoulder as described in the second motion of the *Slope* from the *Order*.

Two. Cut away the right hand to the side.

9. FIXING BAYONETS.

Caution.—The Squad (Platoon, &c.) will fix Bayonets.

Fix. The right-hand man of the formation will take three paces forward, resuming his place in line when the third motion is completed. This is not applicable to funeral firing parties.

Bayonets. Seize the handle of the bayonet with the left hand, back of the hand to the body, bear down until the bayonet is horizontal, left elbow to the front, at the same time push the muzzle of the rifle sharply forward and turn the head and eyes to the right, the right-hand man looking to the left.

Two. Taking the time from the right-hand man, draw the bayonet, turning the point upwards and keeping the elbow down. Place the handle on the bayonet standard, with the ring over the muzzle, pressing it home to the catch, body and head to be erect. The right-hand man will raise his left hand to the front and 45 degrees above the horizontal and turn his head and eyes to the left, the remainder of the unit looking towards him.

Three. The right-hand man will, when he sees everyone steady, drop his hand to his side and the whole will come to the *Order*, at the same time cut away the left hand to the side, turning the head and eyes to the front.

10. UNFIXING BAYONETS. (Plate 9.)

Caution.—**The Squad (Platoon, &c.) will unfix Bayonets.**

Unfix. The left-hand man of the formation will take three paces forward, resuming his place in line when the fifth motion is completed.

Bayonets. Keeping the heels closed, place the rifle between the knees, guard to the front, and grasp the handle of the bayonet with the right hand, knuckles to the front, thumb of the left hand on bayonet bolt spring, draw the rifle into the body with the knees and press the spring. Raise the bayonet about 1 inch, and at the same time turn the head and eyes to the left. The left-hand man will raise his right arm to the front at an angle of 45 degrees above the horizontal, holding the bayonet vertical and looking to the right. The remainder of the unit will look towards him.

Two. Taking the time from the left-hand man, drop the point to the left side, ring to the rear, returning the bayonet half-way into the scabbard (the left-hand man forcing his bayonet home), at the same time seize the scabbard with the left hand, thumb underneath the frog, guiding the bayonet into the scabbard with the forefinger of the left hand.

Three. Taking time from the left-hand man, who will raise his right arm (as in **One**) force the bayonet home.

Four. Taking time from the left-hand man, seize the rifle at the lower band, retaining hold of the scabbard with the left hand.

Five. Taking time from the left-hand man, return to the order.



"Unfixing Bayonets."



Position of "Port Arms."

11. INSPECTION OF ARMS. (Plate 10.)

**For
Inspection,
Port—Arms.**

Cant the rifle, muzzle leading, with the right hand smartly across the body, guard to the left and downwards, the barrel crossing opposite the point of the left shoulder, and meet it at the same time with the left hand close behind the backsight, thumb and fingers round the rifle, the left wrist to be opposite the left breast, both elbows close to the body.

Turn the safety catch completely over to the front with the thumb of the right hand. Pull out the cut-off if closed, first pressing it downwards with the thumb; then seize the knob of the bolt with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand, turn it sharply upwards, and draw back the bolt to its full extent; raise the back sight, then grasp the butt with the right hand at the small, thumb immediately in rear of the resistance piece and pointing to the muzzle.

**Ease—
Springs.**

From the position described above, work the bolt rapidly backwards and forwards until all cartridges are removed from the magazine and chamber,* allowing them to fall to the ground, then close the breech, press the trigger, close the cut-off by placing the right hand over the bolt and pressing the cut-off inwards, turn the safety catch over to the rear, lower the backsight, and return the hand to the small.

Or, if the magazine is charged :—(For use on Active Service only.)

Lock—Bolt. Close the breech, then turn the safety catch over to the rear, lower the back sight, and return the hand to the small.

Order—Arms. Holding the rifle firmly in the left hand, seize it with the right hand at the lower band.

* This precaution will also be adopted when magazines are not charged.

Two. As in the second motion of the *Order* from the *Slope*.

Three. As in the third motion of the *Order* from the *Slope*.

Instructions for Inspecting Arms.

1. When arms are inspected at the *Port* only, as in inspecting a platoon on parade, the officer or petty officer will see that the exterior of the rifle is clean and free from rust; that the magazine and action are clean and in good order; that the sights are at zero, leaf up; and that no parts are loose or damaged.

As the Inspecting Officer comes to each man he may take the rifle by the muzzle. The seaman will then lower the rifle to allow the officer to inspect the bore, at the same time placing the thumb nail of the right hand in front of the bolt to reflect the light down the barrel.

2. Each man, when the officer has passed the file next to him, will, without further word of command, *Ease Springs, Order Arms, and Stand at Ease*. The last two men of each rank will *Ease Springs, Order Arms* and *Stand-at-Ease* together.

3. If it is desired to examine bayonets they should be fixed and examined at the *Order*.

12. THE TRAIL FROM THE ORDER.

Trail—Arms. By a slight bend of the right arm give the rifle a cant forward and seize it at the point of balance, bringing it at once to a horizontal position at the right side at the full extent of the arm.

13. THE ORDER FROM THE TRAIL.

Order—Arms. Raising the muzzle, catch the rifle at the lower band and come to the *Order*.

Note.—The trail is not to be used at drill in close order. This position is only intended for field movements in both close and extended order.

14. THE SLOPE FROM THE TRAIL.

Slope—Arms. Carry the rifle to a sloping position on the left shoulder, and with the left hand seize the rifle as taught at the *Slope*.

Two. Cut the right hand to the side.

15. THE TRAIL FROM THE SLOPE.

Trail—Arms. Seize the rifle with the right hand at the point of balance.

Two. Bring the rifle to the trail and cut the left hand smartly to the side.

16. TO CHANGE ARMS AT THE TRAIL.

Change—Arms. Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, magazine to the front, upper part of the arm close to the side, forearm horizontal, hand in line with the belt.

Two. Pass the rifle across the front of the body, catching it with the left hand at the point of balance, at the same time cutting the right hand smartly to the side. In this position the rifle is to be held perpendicular and opposite the left shoulder as in **One**.

Three. Lower the rifle to the full extent of the left arm at the *Trail*.

17. THE SHORT TRAIL FROM THE ORDER.

Short—Trail. Raise the rifle about 3 inches from the ground, keeping the barrel close to the shoulder.

If standing with ordered arms, and directed to form fours, to close to the right or left, to step back, or to take any named number of paces forward, men will come to the *Short Trail*.

18. TO CHANGE ARMS AT THE SLOPE.

Change—Arms. Pass the left hand up quickly and seize the rifle at the small, fingers and thumb round the stock; at the same time grasp the butt with the right hand, the first two joints of the fingers grasping the outside of the butt, thumb round the heel.

Two. Raise the rifle to a perpendicular position and carry it across the body, opposite the right shoulder.

Three. Place it on the right shoulder, guard to the left, thumb round the heel.

Four. Cut the left hand to the side.

Note.—To change arms from the right to the left shoulder act as above, reading left for right, and right for left.

19. THE SECURE FROM THE SLOPE.

Secure—Arms. Bring the rifle down to the full extent of the left arm and seize it with the right hand as in the first motion of the *Order*.

Two. Turn the magazine to the front, seizing the rifle with the left hand at the hand guard.

Three. Give the butt a sharp cant to the rear, place the breech under the left arm-pit, knob of bolt to the rear, muzzle inclined slightly to the right and downwards, at the same time cut away the right hand to the side.

20. THE SLOPE FROM THE SECURE.

Slope—Arms. Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position opposite the left shoulder, at the same time meeting it at the small of the butt with the right hand.

Two. Carry the rifle to the left shoulder, turning the magazine out, seizing the butt with the left hand as in the first motion of the *Slope* from the *Present*.

Three. Cut away the right hand to the side.

21. THE SECURE FROM THE ORDER.

Secure—Arms. Carry the rifle with the right hand to a vertical position opposite the left shoulder, sling to the front, lower band in line with point of shoulder, at the same time seize the rifle with the left hand at the hand-guard.

Two. As in the third motion of *Secure* from the *Slope*.

22. THE ORDER FROM THE SECURE.

Order—Arms. Bring the rifle to a vertical position opposite the left shoulder, sling to the front, and seize it with the right hand at the lower band.

Two. Bring the rifle to the right side and seize it as for the second motion of the *Order* from the *Slope*.

Three. As for the third motion of the *Order* from the *Slope*.

23. TO CHANGE ARMS FROM THE SECURE.

Change—Arms. Bring the rifle to a vertical position at the left side, holding it with the left hand, forearm horizontal.

Two. Pass the rifle into the right hand and hold it at the hand-guard at the right side, forearm horizontal. Cut the left hand away to the side.

Three. Bring the rifle to the position of *Secure* under the right arm.

Note.—When marching with arms at *Secure* and any order is given to turn, form fours or two deep, etc., which would cause the rifle to foul the next man, the rifle will be brought to a vertical position at the side, as in *Change Arms* from the *Secure* on the first motion of the turn or form, and will be brought to the *Secure* as the last motion is completed.

24. SLINGING ARMS.

Open Out—Slings. Place the butt to the front, rest the barrel against the right shoulder; open out the sling to the full extent and return to the *Order*.

Sling—Arms. On the command **Sling—Arms**, pass the head and right arm between the sling and rifle, the sling passing over the left shoulder, and the rifle, muzzle upwards, hanging diagonally across the back.

Unslung—Arms. Unslung and return to the *Order*.

Shorten up—Slings. Place the butt to the front as in *Open out Slings*, tauten the sling, and return to the *Order*.

Notes.—(i) Field gun's crew, if armed, will sling their rifles.

(ii) When marching at ease the rifle may be carried slung over one shoulder in a vertical position at the side either end up as desired, but rifles should not be slung as described above on account of the pressure on a man's chest.

(iii) Men entering or leaving a boat will sling arms as described in *Note* (ii). (Arms are never to remain slung while in a boat.)

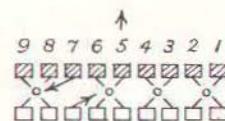
25. PILING ARMS. (Plate 11.)

The squad will be in two ranks and with arms at the *Order*.

Pile—Arms. The rear rank will take a pace forward and turn the barrels of their rifles towards the front rank. The front rank will turn about and place the butts of their rifles between their feet.

Two. The odd numbers of front rank will incline the muzzles towards those of the even numbers, barrels downwards, slipping the right hand to the upper band, the odd numbers will then seize the rifles of the even numbers with the left hand in the same manner and hold up the piling swivels of both rifles

PILING ARMS



With an odd File



With an odd & incomplete File

(N^o 7 of Rear Rank will act as an Even N^o)

with the forefingers and thumbs, crossing the muzzles by the right to bring the swivels together. The even numbers will drop the right hand to the side.

Three. The even numbers of the rear rank, holding their rifles, sling upwards, at the point of balance, will incline the muzzles forward, and with the left hand will link swivels through the crossed muzzles of the front rank, raising their butts as high as necessary to do so. The odd numbers of the front rank will now turn the barrels of their rifles towards the even numbers of the rear rank, who will then place the heel of their butt 6 inches to the right of the toe of the right foot so as to make the pile secure. The odd numbers of the front rank and the even numbers of the rear rank drop their hands to the side on completion of the motion.

Four. The odd numbers of the rear rank will lodge their rifles against the pile. Should there be an odd or incomplete file, they will rest their rifles against the pile nearest their right. Should there be an odd *and* incomplete file, they will form a pile, and will then drop their hands to the side.

Stand—Clear. Ranks will step back one pace and turn to the right flank.

After piling arms, the order **Fall—Out** will be given after **Stand—Clear**. On again falling in, the men will place themselves as they stood before falling out, standing at ease.

26. UNPIILING ARMS.

Stand—to. Ranks will turn inwards, and take a pace forward.

Unpile—Arms. The whole will seize their rifles at the lower band.

Two. Swivels will be unlinked by raising and inclining the butts inwards and rifles brought to the **Order**. No. 1 of front rank will raise his disengaged arm to the front and 45 degrees above the horizontal,

with the forefingers and thumbs, crossing the muzzles by the right to bring the swivels together. The even numbers will drop the right hand to the side.

Three. The even numbers of the rear rank, holding their rifles, sling upwards, at the point of balance, will incline the muzzles forward, and with the left hand will link swivels through the crossed muzzles of the front rank, raising their butts as high as necessary to do so. The odd numbers of the front rank will now turn the barrels of their rifles towards the even numbers of the rear rank, who will then place the heel of their butt 6 inches to the right of the toe of the right foot so as to make the pile secure. The odd numbers of the front rank and the even numbers of the rear rank drop their hands to the side on completion of the motion.

Four. The odd numbers of the rear rank will lodge their rifles against the pile. Should there be an odd or incomplete file, they will rest their rifles against the pile nearest their right. Should there be an odd and incomplete file, they will form a pile, and will then drop their hands to the side.

Stand—Clear. Ranks will step back one pace and turn to the right flank.

After piling arms, the order **Fall—Out** will be given after **Stand—Clear**. On again falling in, the men will place themselves as they stood before falling out, standing at ease.

26. UNPILING ARMS.

Stand—to. Ranks will turn inwards, and take a pace forward.

Unpile—Arms. The whole will seize their rifles at the lower band.

Two. Swivels will be unlinked by raising and inclining the butts inwards and rifles brought to the **Order**. No. 1 of front rank will raise his disengaged arm to the front and 45 degrees above the horizontal,

Slope Arms.
Order Arms.
Unfix Bayonets.
Slope Arms.
Change Arms (twice).
Secure Arms.
Change Arms (twice).
Slope Arms.
Trail Arms.
Change Arms (twice).
Order Arms.
Secure Arms.
Order Arms.

Trail Arms.
Order Arms.
Short Trail.
As you were.
Ground Arms.
Take up Arms.
Shoulder Arms.
Present Arms.
Shoulder Arms.
Slope Arms.
Shoulder Arms.
Order Arms.
Stand at Ease.

} For use
on
Board
Ship
only.

34. MOTIONS OF THE RIFLE ON THE MARCH.

Certain motions of the rifle are to be practised on the march.

The cautionary and executive words of command are to be given on two successive paces with the right foot, and the separate motions of the rifle (as detailed "by numbers" in the foregoing Sections 2 to 32) are to be performed as the left foot comes to the ground.

The following motions will be practised:—

Stepping off, bringing Arms to "Slope."
Changing Arms at the Slope.
Secure Arms from the Slope.
Changing Arms at the Secure.
Turning about at the Secure.
Forming Fours and Forming Two-deep at Secure.
Slope from the Secure.
Trail from the Slope.
Change at the Trail (twice).
Turning about at the Trail.
Slope from the Trail.
Shoulder from the Slope.
Slope from the Shoulder.
And Stepping off, bringing arms to the Shoulder.



Position of "High Port."

35. FIXING BAYONETS ON THE MARCH.

Fix—Bayonets. When at the *Slope* seize the rifle with the right hand at the point of balance, and bring it to the *Trail*, with the muzzle sloping upwards in front of the right breast. Draw and fix the bayonet with the left hand. Bring the rifle to the *Slope*.

Note.—When at the *Trail* raise the muzzle of the rifle and proceed as above described.

36. THE HIGH PORT. (Plate 12.)

This position is always to be assumed when moving in extended order with the bayonet fixed.

When teaching the *High Port*, bayonets are to be fixed, and the squad dressed with intervals.

The hands hold the rifle as when on guard, the left hand level with the left ear, the right hand level with and in front of the buckle of the belt; the rifle will therefore have the magazine to the front, the barrel will cross the point of the left shoulder.

High Port—Arms. Cant the rifle (muzzle leading) with the right hand across the body, magazine to the front, and meet it with the left hand just above the lower band, grasp the small of the butt with the right hand, first two fingers on the right-hand side and the thumb around the small of the butt, the other two fingers round the butt.

To Order Arms.

Order—Arms. Without moving the rifle, shift the grip of the left hand to the hand guard and at the same time seize the rifle with the right hand at the lower band.

Two. As in the second motion of the *Order* from the *Slope*.

Three. As in the third motion of the *Order* from the *Slope*.

37. PAYING COMPLIMENTS WITH ARMS.

(Plate 13.)

When a man carrying a rifle passes or addresses an officer he will do so at the *Slope*, and will salute by smartly striking the small of the butt with the right hand, forearm horizontal, back of the hand to the front, fingers extended, saluting at the same number of paces before reaching the officer, and cutting the hand away, as directed when saluting without arms, Part I, Section 7, Note (iv). In passing an officer, men will always turn their heads towards him, in the same manner as when unarmed.

A man if halted when an officer passes, will turn towards him and stand at the *Slope* and salute.

Saluting with Arms on Board Ship. (Plate 14.)

When a petty officer or man salutes an officer he will do so at the shoulder, with the left arm brought across the body, the hand, fingers extended, meeting the rifle in line with the right elbow. When addressing or being addressed by an officer he will halt a short distance from the officer and salute, saluting again before moving off.

FUNERAL EXERCISES.

38. OPENING TO FUNERAL FIRING PARTY DISTANCE.

Open to firing party distance from the right (a caution).

Quick—March. The right file stands fast; the remainder turn away and step off, each man takes one pace less than the number he called in the ranks, halts, turns to his front and dresses by the right.

39. REVERSE ARMS FROM THE PRESENT.

Reverse—Arms. Seize the rifle with the right hand at the hand-guard and drop the left hand to the side; at the same time bring the right foot up to the left.



"Saluting with Arms."



"Saluting with Arms."

Two. Carry the rifle under the left arm by dropping the muzzle to the rear, sling uppermost, guard as high as the chin, and seize the small of the butt with the left hand.

Three. Seize the rifle with the right hand behind the body at the lower band, and at the same time push the rifle down with the left hand, till the toe of the butt is as high as the left eye.

40. QUICK MARCH (this should be taught in slow time without stepping off).

On the command **Quick—March**, the rifle is brought from the reverse to the trail at the left side, butt leading, sling uppermost.

Quick—March. Seize the rifle with the left hand round the hand guard.

Two. Bring the rifle to the trail, butt to the front, sling uppermost, drop the right hand to the side.

41. CHANGE ARMS.

Change—Arms. Bending the arm from the elbow, bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the left shoulder.

Two. Pass the rifle across the body to the right side, and seize it with the right hand, as at present held with the left, dropping that hand to the side.

Three. Bring the rifle to the trail, sling uppermost.

42. SLOW MARCH (without stepping off).

When approaching the churchyard, on the command **Slow—March**, the rifle is brought to the reverse from the trail at the left side.

Slow—March. Give the rifle a cant underneath the left armpit with the left hand, and seize it at the reverse.

43. RESTING ON ARMS REVERSED.

Rest on your Arms—Reversed. Bring the right hand smartly to the right side, and with the left hand lower the rifle to a perpendicular position until the muzzle rests on the toe of the left foot.

Two. Place the right hand smartly on the butt, thumb close to the forefinger.

Three. Place the left hand over the right and droop the head until the chin touches the breast.

Attention. Raise the head.

44. REVERSE FROM RESTING ON ARMS REVERSED.

Reverse—Arms. Seize the rifle with the left hand at the small.

Two. Bring the rifle under the left arm, at the same time seizing it with the right hand behind the body.

45. TO CLOSE FROM FUNERAL FIRING PARTY DISTANCE.

On the right, close (a caution).

Quick—March. The right file will stand fast, the remainder will turn right and step off, halting, turning to their front and dressing as they arrive.

Note.—The same may be done on the left or any named file.

46. SLOPE ARMS FROM RESTING ON ARMS REVERSED.

Slope—Arms. Raise the rifle with the right hand, at the same time seize the rifle with the left hand in front of the magazine, back of the hand to the body.

Two. Shift the grasp of the right hand to the small of the butt, back of the hand towards the ground, thumb to the front.

Three. Lower the butt towards the body and carry it to the position of the slope on the left shoulder with the right hand, at the same time seizing the butt with the left hand at the position of the slope.

Four. Cut away the right hand smartly to the side.

47. CEREMONIAL FIRING.

Volleys—Load. Seize the rifle with the right hand at the small of the butt.

Two. Bring the rifle down to the loading position, turn the safety catch forward, open the bolt, enter a cartridge, close the bolt and return the hand to the small.

Present. Rifles will be brought to the position for firing but elevated at an angle of 45 degrees, rifles dressed by the right.

Fire. Each man will at once press the trigger remaining at the present until command **Load** or **Unload** is given.

Note.—Two more volleys will be similarly fired.

Unload. Men will come to the loading position and carry out the motions of unloading, remaining in the loading position, rifles elevated at an angle of 45 degrees.

Order—Arms. Seize the rifle at the lower band with the right hand, at the same time turn on the right heel to the front and bring the left foot back to the right.

Two. Bring the rifle down to the right side, place the butt quietly on the ground, cutting the left hand to the side.

48. REST ON ARMS REVERSED FROM THE ORDER.

Rest on your Arms—Reversed. As in first motion of *Slope* from *Order*, Section 5.

Two. Lower the muzzle forwards and downwards and catch the butt just below the heel with the left hand, back of the hand to the left, fingers to the right, and place the muzzle on the toe of the left foot.

Three. Cover the butt with the right hand.

Four. Cover the right hand with the left and droop the chin on the breast.

49. PRESENT FROM RESTING ON ARMS REVERSED.

For use of Parties Lining Streets.

Present—Arms. As in the first motion, Sect. 46.

Two. As in the second motion, Sect. 46.

Three. Lower the butt towards the body and come to the position of *Present* as in Section 7.

ACCOUTREMENTS.

WEBBING EQUIPMENT FOR SEAMEN.

50. GENERAL DESCRIPTION. (Plate 15.)

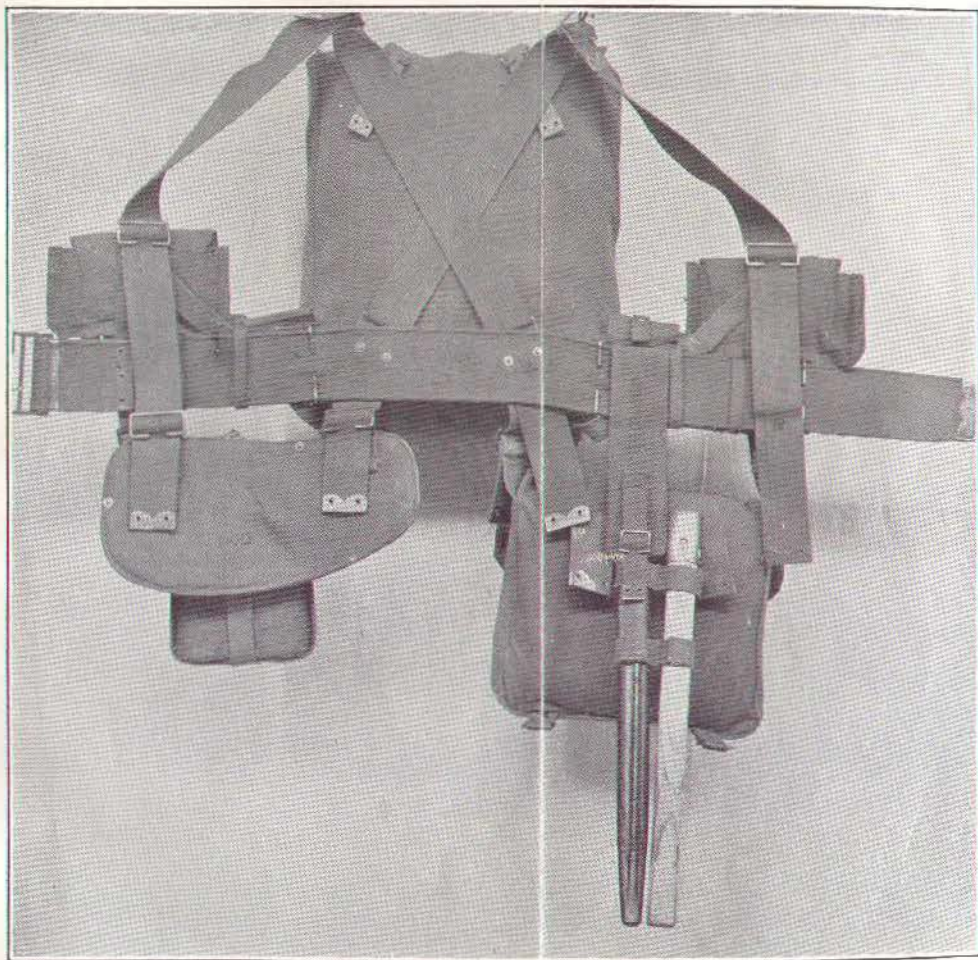
The main principle underlying the design of the Pattern 1908 Web Equipment is that the complete set which is called the "Marching Order" equipment can be divided into two parts.

The first part consists of such portions of the equipment as is necessary to enable the following items to be carried, viz. :—

- Rifle (with sling).
- Bayonet.
- Ammunition
- Intrenching tool.
- Waterbottle
- Haversack.

To these may be added one iron ration, knife, spoon and fork, and such food as can be carried in the haversack.

When a second iron ration is to be carried, it will be distributed about the equipment as most convenient.



"Marching Order"—Rigged.



Marching Order—Side.

The second part consists of the pack and supporting straps, which can readily be removed from the remainder of the equipment.

If necessary the first part only can be worn alone. It is known as "marching order without pack." (Plate 19.)

The remainder, which consists of the pack and supporting straps, can, together with the contents of the pack, be discarded when it is considered desirable, and forwarded as opportunity offers.

The pack contains :—

Great coat.	Holdall.
Comforter cap.	Razor.
Spare pair of socks.	Comb.
Mess tin and cover.	Towel.
Tooth brush.	Soap.
Shaving brush.	Housewife.

This arrangement allows of a man having normally with him the whole of his equipment, while, when specially ordered, the pack can be discarded,* and, if necessary, extra ammunition in cotton bandoliers carried in its place.

(A) *The component parts of the equipment are all directly connected together.* The result of this is that the whole of it can be taken off in one motion, and unless it is required to be taken apart for any purpose, remains intact and ready for putting on again at a moment's notice. (Plate 15.)

The component parts of the equipment consist of the following :—

(Plate 16.)

- (a) Waistbelt.
- (b) Frog.
- (c) Braces (2).
- (d) Cartridge carriers (1 left, 1 right).
- (e) Pack.

* The mess tin can, if necessary, be removed from the pack and strapped to the back of the waistbelt.

- (f) Supporting straps (2).
- (g) Haversack.
- (h) Waterbottle carrier.
- (i) Intrenching tool carrier (head).
- (j) Loop on haversack.
- (k) Loop on waterbottle carrier.
- (l) Extending piece (waterbottle carrier).
- (m) Intrenching tool carrier (helve).
- (n) End pieces.
- (o) Extending piece (cartridge carrier).
- (p) Carrier diagonal strap.

(a) *Waistbelt*.—This is issued in three sizes, large, medium and small, the over-all length of the webbing being 48, 44 and 40 inches.

51. TO ASSEMBLE THE EQUIPMENT.

As has been previously stated, the design of the equipment admits of variations in the relative positions of certain portions of it, but the normal arrangement will be as now described.

(i) Adjust the waistbelt until it is comfortably tight, taking care that when fastened the large buckle comes in the centre of the body in front, and that the two smaller buckles are in a perfectly central position at the back. When the belt is fastened there should be about 3 inches of the running end clear of the buckle. *This running end may be tucked away under the left side of the belt, in which case both gateways of the buckles should show to the front. The "outside" of the belt is the side on which the rear buckles are fixed. The runner should be slid close up to the buckle.

(ii) When the belt has been satisfactorily adjusted, lay it out on the ground, inside downwards and the large buckle to the right. Slip the bayonet frog over the tongue of the belt and bring it round to a position

* *Note*.—The photographs illustrating this Section have all been taken showing the running end of the belt *not* tucked away.

on the left-hand side so that it will hang, when the belt is put on, just in rear of the left hip bone.

(iii) Attach the cartridge carriers on the outside of the belt by passing the double hooks over and under the edges of the belt. Their position on the belt may vary with each man, but, speaking generally, the rear double hooks should be set close up to the rear buckles on the belt; the carrier will thus lie over the frog. When the position has been determined, pass the small securing straps round the inside of the belt and snap them on to their studs.

(iv) Take one of the braces and secure one of its ends to one of the rear buckles on the belt, pulling it through the buckle until, in the case of an averagely tall man, it coincides with the fixed end piece on the belt. Pass the other end of the brace (taking care not to twist it) through the cartridge carrier buckle on the *opposite* side, and pull it through until it coincides likewise with the fixed end piece. Repeat this operation with the other brace.

Although each of the braces is symmetrical, that is to say, is reversible fore and aft, it is essential that their sliding buckles should be on the rear part of the braces, and so disposed that the *open* sides are directed upwards.

(v) Try the equipment on in its present state, getting into it as if it were a waistcoat. If it has been properly fitted, the belt should rest in its natural position all round the waist, while the braces should show no slack in them. The latter will be crossed behind and come down vertically in front, while four end pieces will hang below the belt on each side, two being to the front, and two to the rear, and one of each pair on top of the other. Make any necessary adjustments, then remove the equipment and lay it on the ground as before. Insert the bayonet and scabbard in the frog.

On many men the bayonet will be found to ride more comfortably if the frog be worn on the belt *between* the two rear pockets of the lower row: in this case the

rear small securing strap cannot be passed round the belt, but this is not essential.

(vi) Attach the carrier for the helve of the intrenching tool, slip the rear loops of the carrier over the scabbard and slide the carrier up until the top edge of the buckle abuts against the bottom edge of the frog.

The strap connecting the two loops should be nearest to the hip. Buckle the carrier to the frog, taking care that the buckle is just below the frog and not between it and the thigh. Insert the intrenching tool helve and close the snap fastening round it.

(vii) Attach the haversack by its large buckles to the two outer end pieces on the left-hand side. Adjust it so that it hangs in a convenient position on the left hip without interfering with the drawing or returning of the bayonet.

(viii) In a similar way attach the carrier for the head of the intrenching tool to the inner end pieces on the right-hand side, adjusting it until it rests comfortably on the hip.

(ix) Then similarly attach the waterbottle carrier (with the waterbottle in it) to the outer end pieces on the same side, and adjust both carriers until they ride comfortably. The free end of the vertical strap of the waterbottle carrier must be made secure by twisting it round the horizontal band to prevent the weight of the filled waterbottle drawing it through the loop.

The equipment as it now stands represents the part essential to fighting efficiency (Plate 19). It will be known as "marching order equipment without pack."

When the complete equipment is to be worn proceed as follows:—

(x) The articles which are carried in the pack call for careful packing, if a neat and compact result is to be obtained. The mess tin should be the last article placed in the pack.

(xi) Lay the assembled equipment face downwards on the ground and place the pack with the opening upwards upon it. Attach the buckle of one of the

supporting straps to the carrier diagonal strap coming out from the back lower corner of one of the cartridge carriers, taking care that the buckle is as close up to the corner of the belt as possible. Pass the end of the supporting strap through the web loop on the bottom of the pack and lead it diagonally across the front of the pack up to the small buckle on the opposite suspension tab. Pass it through the buckle, pull it as tight as it will go and secure it. Repeat the operation with the other strap.

As the correct balance of the equipment depends almost entirely upon these supporting straps, it is very important that they should be as taut as possible, as they then bind the pack tightly to the main body of the equipment and prevent it shifting.

(xii) Adjust the sliding buckles on the braces so that they come naturally to the point of attachment of the securing tabs on the pack. Pass the tabs through the sliding buckles on the braces; if properly fitted, the braces should now lie flat against the back of the pack, being neither slack nor in a state of strain, and the bottom of the pack should be on a level with the lower edge of the waistbelt.

The essential point to remember is that the weight of the pack is, in the first instance at any rate, carried by the diagonal straps attached to the carriers, and not by the securing tabs at the top of the pack. The function of these latter is to keep the pack from falling away from the body. After a short time the weight of the pack slightly stretches the narrow end straps of the carriers, the weight then becoming partly transferred to the securing tabs. If the whole or even the greater portion of the weight be allowed to be transferred to the securing tabs, the essential merit of the design is sacrificed.

To Open the Pack when Attached.

(xiii) Cast off the supporting straps from the small buckles attached to the securing tabs, loosen and open the cover.

To Reclose the Pack.

(xiv) Secure the cover and refasten the supporting straps as before, *taking care that they are drawn taut.* If this is not done the weight of the pack will hang from the shoulders, the most important point to be avoided.

To Discard the Pack.

(xv) Cast off the lower ends of the carrier diagonal straps and free the securing tabs from the brace buckles. The pack will then drop off, the supporting straps remaining attached to it. This is much more easily done when the whole kit is removed.

To Put the Pack on Again.

(xvi) See (xi). The operations numbered (xiii) to (xvi) cannot well be carried out by a man unaided so long as the equipment is in position. Having regard, however, to the speed and facility with which the whole equipment can be taken off and put on again, it is a simple matter to slip the whole equipment off, carry out what is required, and replace it.

To Carry the Haversack and Waterbottle on the back.

(xvii) Lay the equipment on the ground and remove the pack, waterbottle carrier and haversack. Secure the 1 inch diagonal end pieces of the cartridge carriers to the small buckles at the lower corners of the haversack. Draw the sliding buckles down the braces until they come into a convenient position opposite the fixed ends of the tabs with brass tips at the top of the haversack. Secure these tabs to the sliding buckles. *The weight of the haversack should not be taken by these tabs, but by the lower corner buckles above mentioned.* Lay the waterbottle carrier on the front of the haversack. If the waterbottle carrier is provided with the snap fastener and the haversack with the corresponding stud, snap the fastener on the stud and secure the extension piece on the carrier to the small buckle on the top of the haversack, pulling it well through.

If there be no snap fastener on the waterbottle carrier, a horizontal loop is provided on the flap of the

haversack. This latter arrangement is provided in the latest makes of carrier and haversack. Withdraw the extension piece of the carrier from the loop in the web piece running round the upper portion of the waterbottle, pass it through the loop on the flap of the haversack, then through the carrier loop and secure it to the buckle on the centre of the top of the haversack as before.

To Carry the Waterbottle, Haversack, or Intrenching Tool separate from the rest of the Equipment.

(xviii) Separate one (or both if required) of the braces from the rest of the equipment, and attach it (or them) by the ends to the article (or articles) which it is desired to carry. The ordinary method of slinging across the shoulder can then be resorted to. (Plate 18.)

52. AMMUNITION CARRIED.

The amount of ammunition carried will depend on circumstances. The total number of rounds which can be carried is 150.

Note.—Cartridge Carriers: These are not interchangeable, one being reserved for the right and one for the left hand side; in all other respects they are identical.

Each consists of an assemblage of five 15-round pockets in two tiers with separate covers secured by means of snap fasteners.

53. CARE, PRESERVATION AND MARKING.

When the equipment has once been properly fitted to each man it should be kept assembled as far as possible, although the pack need not always remain attached. It will be found convenient if, when a correct fit has been obtained, a light mark is made to show where each adjustment should always come. This saves trouble in case the equipment has to be taken apart and reassembled.

Should the equipment become dirty or greasy, it may be washed, using warm water, soap and a sponge, after which Web Blanco, Pattern 97, should be rubbed on lightly in a liquid condition with a brush. When dry the surface of the equipment should be brushed with a soft brush to remove surplus blanco dust. A scrubbing

brush should not be used, as scrubbing impairs the waterproof qualities of the equipment. Dust and mud (when dry) should be removed with an ordinary clothes brush. On active service, the metal work should not be polished, but allowed to get dull, so as to avoid catching the rays of the sun.

Should the various straps be found to slip after they have become much worn the horns may be slightly bent below the surface of the buckle: this bending must on no account exceed one-tenth of an inch.

The component parts of the equipment may be marked in black.

Web equipment is to be marked with $\frac{1}{4}$ in. stamp as shown below, viz. :—

Item.	Marking.	Place of Marking.
Belts, waist :—		
Large - - -	N. \blacktriangle L.	} On inside of 3-in. brass tab at tongue of belt.
Medium - - -	N. \blacktriangle M.	
Small - - -	N. \blacktriangle S.	
Braces with buckles -	\blacktriangle N	On 2-in. brass tab.
Carriers, Cartridge, 75 rounds :—		
Left - - -	\blacktriangle N.	} On 2-in. brass tab.
Right - - -	\blacktriangle N.	
Carriers, intrenching tool :—		
Heads - - -	\blacktriangle N.	On 1-in. brass tab.
Helves - - -	\blacktriangle N.	} On 1-in. brass tab of strap securing with fasteners.
Carriers, water bottle	\blacktriangle N.	On brass tab.
Frogs - - -	\blacktriangle N.	On 1-in. brass tab.
Haversacks - - -	\blacktriangle N.	On 2-in. brass tab
Packs - - -	\blacktriangle N.	On 2-in. brass tab
Slings, rifle - - -	\blacktriangle N.	On $1\frac{1}{2}$ -in. brass tabs.
Straps, supporting -	\blacktriangle N.	On 1-in. brass tab.

Covers, mess tin, should be marked with an \blacktriangle either in black ink or paint, whichever is found the most lasting.



Position of "Load."

The following table shows the corresponding rig for officers and men :—

Description of Dress.	Officers.	Petty Officers and Men Armed with Rifles.
Drill Order -	Sword and belt, gaiters and whistle.	As in Plate 6.
Musketry Order	Sword and belt, field glasses, gaiters and whistle.	As in Plate 17.
Marching Order with pack.	Complete equipment, field glasses, whistle and gaiters.	As in Plates 20 to 23.
Marching Order without pack.	Do. do.	As in Plate 19.
Fatigue Order -	Stick (optional) -	As in Plate 18 (gaiters optional).

"FIRING EXERCISES" AS TAUGHT ON PARADE FOR DRILL PURPOSES.

(Musketry Order is to be worn for the Firing Exercises.)

54. FIRING STANDING.

To Load. (Plate 24.)—On the command **Load**, turn half right and at the same time carry the left foot to the left and slightly forward so that the body is equally balanced on both feet, bring the rifle to the right side in front of the body with the muzzle pointing upwards, small of the butt just in front of the hip, heel of the butt against the inside of the right thigh, grasp the stock with the left hand immediately in front of the magazine. Turn the safety catch completely over to the

front with the thumb of right hand, pull out the cut off, first pressing it downwards with the thumb, then seize the knob with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand, turn it sharply upwards and draw back the bolt to its full extent, take charger between the thumb and first two fingers of right hand and place it vertically in the guide, then placing the ball of the thumb immediately in front of the charger and hooking the forefinger under the cut off, force the cartridges down with a firm and continuous pressure until the top cartridge has engaged in the magazine, with the forefingers and thumb of the right hand remove the empty charger,* force the bolt sharply home, turning the knob well down and with the thumb of the right hand turn the safety catch completely over to the rear, then button the carrier, seize the rifle with the right hand in front of the left, bring the left foot back to the right and *Order Arms*. (See footnote after **Stop**.)

* *Note*.—The magazine will hold two charges.

To Unload.—As when loading, but after drawing back the bolt, without turning the knob down, work the bolt rapidly backwards and forwards, until the cartridges are removed from the magazine and chamber, allowing them to fall on the ground; then close the breech, press the trigger, close the cut off by placing right hand over the bolt and pressing the cut off down and inwards, apply the safety catch, lower the back-sight or long range sight and *Order Arms*.

To Adjust the Backsight.—Hold the rifle in the loading position so that the lines on the backsight can be plainly seen, press in the studs on the side of the slide with the left hand, move the slide until the lines are even with the place on the leaf, giving the elevation for the distance named, taking care that it is firmly fixed.

To Adjust the Long Range Sight.—Hold the rifle in the loading position so that the dial can be clearly seen (it is necessary to turn the rifle over, barrel to the right), move the pointer to the place on the dial giving



Position of "Firing—Standing."

the elevation for the distance named and then raise the aperture sight.

Rest.—Seize the rifle with the right hand at the lower band, place the butt on the ground between the feet, clasp the back of the right hand with the left.

As You Were.—Return to the Load position.

Aim and Fire. (Plate 25.)—Load and direct the eyes on the mark. Then bring the rifle into the hollow of the right shoulder, press it in with the left hand, grasp the small firmly with the thumb and three fingers of the right hand, place the forefinger round the lower part of the trigger, and exert sufficient pressure to take the first pull; the backsight to be upright, left elbow well under the rifle, right elbow a little lower than and well to the front of the right shoulder; as the rifle touches the shoulder bring the cheek down on the butt, keeping face well back from the right hand and cocking piece, close the left eye, align the sight on the mark, restrain the breathing and press the trigger, after a pause bring the rifle to the loading position and repeat the practice, until the order **Stop**.

Stop.—At the order **Stop**, load and apply the safety catch.

Note.—To **Order Arms** from this position. Bring the left foot back to the right, at the same time turning to the front on the right heel, and seize the rifle with the right hand at the lower band.

Two. Cut the left hand to the side and bring the rifle to the *Order*.

Go On.—Recommence firing at the same target as before.

Note.—Number of rounds and rate of fire will be ordered, *e.g.*, five rounds, **Go On**.

Cease Firing.—Recharge the magazine, close the cut-off and ease the spring, apply the safety catch.

Note.—This order will be given when a permanent cessation of fire is required.

55. FIRING—LYING. (Plate 26.)

The lying position will generally be adopted by men on open ground, or when firing from continuous low cover, or from behind small rocks, trees, ant-heaps, &c. Preliminary instruction in firing, and firing exercises, will as a rule be carried out in the lying position.

To Lie Down.—Come to the Standing Load position. Place the right hand on the ground, at the same time allow the butt of the rifle to pass to the rear between the right arm and the body, and lie down on the stomach obliquely to the line of fire, with the legs separated, left shoulder well forward, left arm extended to the front, and rifle resting on the ground in a convenient position, muzzle pointing to the front.

To Load.—As when standing.

To Unload.—As when standing.

To Adjust Sights.—Draw the rifle back through the left hand until the lines on the backsight can be clearly seen, and proceed as when standing.

To Aim and Fire.—Proceed as when standing. To obtain elevation, the body must be raised on the elbows and slightly retired. (See Plate 26.)

Men will be trained to assume the lying position rapidly, and to perform the loading and aiming motions with as little movement as possible. The oblique angle is not to be unnecessarily exaggerated. Behind objects affording a restricted amount of cover, the body and legs will be parallel to the line of fire, if the oblique position would increase vulnerability.

56. FIRING IN OTHER POSITIONS.

Men will also be instructed to fire :—

Sitting (Plate 27), which is most suitable when on ground falling at a steep slope. In this position the right shoulder should be kept well back, and the left forearm supported by the thigh, the right elbow resting against the right knee, or unsupported, as desired.



Position of "Firing—Lying."



Position of "Firing—Kneeling."

Kneeling (Plate 28), used mainly when firing from continuous cover, such as a low wall, bank, or hedge or in long grass, crops, &c., which would obstruct the line of sight if the lying position were adopted.

Men may kneel on either or on both knees. In the former case the body may be supported on the heel or not, as desired; the left knee will be in advance of the left heel, and the left elbow rest on or over the left knee; the left leg, hand, and arm, and the right shoulder, should be in the same vertical plane when firing in the open kneeling on the right knee. In the latter, the body may rest on both heels, or be kept upright to suit the height of the cover, the elbows in both instances being unsupported by the body.

57. MUSCLE EXERCISES.

To accustom the muscles to the strain of prolonged firing, the following exercises will be performed daily during the elementary training of men and frequently by trained men. Care must be taken that men are not unduly fatigued.

In each practice, a conspicuous object, representing the target, will be indicated, and the rifle will invariably be thrown into approximate alignment with it. In the first and third exercises the correct aiming position will be assumed, including taking the first pull, bringing the cheek on to the butt, and closing the left eye, but without actually aligning the sights. In the second exercise the first pull will be taken when the right hand grasps the rifle, but the head will not be lowered, the left eye will not be closed, nor will the sights be aligned.

1st Practice.

(To be performed with and without bayonet fixed.)

Caution :—**Muscle Exercise. 1st Practice.**

Standing (Lying). Load. (And remain at the Loading Position.)

One. Bring the rifle to the position for aiming, return at once to the position for loading, and continue the practice.

Unload. As before.

2nd Practice.

Caution:—**Muscle Exercise. 2nd Practice.**

Standing (Lying). Load. (As for 1st Practice.)

One. Bring the rifle to the position for aiming.

Two. Quit the rifle with the right hand.

Three. Seize the rifle with the right hand, and at the same time quit it with the left hand.

Note.—The words **Two** and **Three** will be given at intervals of about 10 seconds. The trigger will not be pressed when in the third position.

Unload. As before.

3rd Practice.

(To be performed with and without bayonet fixed.)

Caution:—**Muscle Exercise. 3rd Practice.**

Standing (Lying). Load. (As for 1st Practice.)

One. Bring the rifle to the position for aiming.

Unload. As before.

Note.—The men will be trained progressively to hold the rifle in this position until they can do so without fatigue for two minutes.

PART III.

FIELD MOVEMENT DRILL.

1. GENERAL REMARKS.

During close order drill a man learns strict discipline and the habit of prompt and unquestioning obedience to orders. He is taught to march, handle his rifle and to move in strict cohesion with other men.

In Field Movement Drill, a man will be taught the formations and systems used when within range of the enemy's fire. It will be obvious that the rigidity of movement obtained in close order drill cannot be maintained during the approach to a Battle, and that the responsibility for executing movements will gradually devolve upon the more junior officers and section leaders.

Quickness in deployment is of vital importance and to secure it, it is essential that units should be trained on a definite and uniform system for shaking out into loose formations. Movements which have to be preceded by instructions or messages are necessarily slow in being carried out. When a force is to be committed to a definite rôle or objective in action, it is necessary to give them instructions; but when once given, further movements should be carried out instantaneously by signal. It is of the greatest advantage for infantry commanders to retain the maximum control over their units as long as possible.

By the system laid down in this chapter, the Battalion and Company Commanders can retain complete and instant control of their Commands even though the

latter are opened out in loose and dispersed formations. Even during the actual attack, quicker control may often be exercised by means of signals, than by sending messages by a runner. There will be numerous occasions when the "change direction" (complete or partial), "incline" and "close" signals in particular may be used. Thus deployed, units may be moved instantly towards a weak portion of the enemy's defence, to meet a sudden counter attack or to manœuvre against an enemy post on the flank.

Note.—Before classes are instructed in Field Movement Drill, Chapters XI and XIII of the Royal Naval Field Service Pocket Book must be studied carefully. The various formations adopted in battle by sections, platoons, companies, &c., are described therein, and the advantages of the various formations are fully discussed.

2. SIGNALS.

The following signals are used in the field and may be utilised by Battalion, company or platoon commanders. A section is seldom extended to such a distance as to render it necessary for the Section Leader to signal to his section.

When controlling men by signal, a "short blast" of the whistle (*i.e.*, the "cautionary blast") will first be blown, before making the signal, in order to attract attention. When satisfied that it is understood, the commander will drop his hand to the side, on which the units under him will act as ordered.

Signals will be made with whichever arm will show most clearly what is meant.

Extend.—The arm extended to full extent over the head and waved slowly from side to side, the hand to be open and to come down as low as the hips on both sides of the body.

Note.—If it is required to extend to a flank, the Commander will point to the required flank before dropping his hand.

Deploy.—Both arms waved horizontally across the body in line with the shoulder from in front of the body to the side.

Notes.—(i) If it is required to deploy to a flank, the commander will point to the required flank before dropping his hands.

(ii) This signal is used to denote "*Form a Square*" or "*Form a square to the right (or left).*"

Deploy from the Centre.—Both arms raised above the head and then allowed to fall until they are stretched out in line with the shoulder on either side of the body.

Note.—This signal is used to denote "*Form a Diamond.*"

Advance.—The arm swung from rear to front below the shoulder.

Halt.—The arm raised at full extent above the head.

Retire.—The arm circled above the head.

Change Direction Right (or Left).—The arm is first extended in line with the shoulder. A circular movement is then made, on completion of which the arm and body should point in the required direction.

Notes.—(i) When halted, the above signal means "*Change Position right (or left).*"

(ii) When in column of fours, or in file or single file, the above signal means right (or left) wheel.

Right (or Left) Incline.—The body turned in the required direction and arm extended in line with the shoulder, and pointing in the required direction.

Note.—There is no separate signal for the command right (or left) turn, but the "Incline signal" given twice in succession will effect the required movement.

Close.—The hand placed on the top of the head, elbow to be square to the right or left according to which hand is used.

Notes.—(i) The above signal denotes *Close* (on the centre). If it is required to close on a flank, the leader will point to the required flank before dropping his hand.

(ii) If, when on the march, it is required to halt as well as close, the leader will perform the halt signal before dropping his hand.

Quick time.—The hand raised in line with the shoulder, the elbow bent and close to the side.

Double.—The clenched hand moved up and down between the thigh and shoulder.

Follow me.—The arm swung from rear to front above the shoulder.

Lie down.—Two or three slight movements of the open hand towards the ground.

Signals with the Rifle.

The following "communicating signals" are made with the rifle:—

Enemy in Sight in Small Numbers.—Weapon held up above, as if guarding the head.

Enemy in Sight in Large Numbers.—As for "Enemy in Sight in Small Numbers," but the weapon raised and lowered frequently.

No Enemy in Sight.—Weapon held up at full extent of arm, point or muzzle uppermost.

These signals are valuable in the case of scouts, &c., sent on ahead from their sections. Care should be taken that signals cannot be seen by the enemy.

Control by Whistle Blasts and Bugle Calls.

The following whistle blasts are used:—

The Cautionary Blast (a short blast).—To draw attention to a signal about to be made.

The Rally Blast (a succession of short blasts).—To denote close on the leader in wood, bush, fog or darkness, when the signal cannot be seen.

Note.—On the above whistle being given, the men will double towards the sound of the whistle, and will rally on the leader, facing in the same direction.

The Alarm Blast (a succession of alternate long and short blasts).—To turn out troops from camp or bivouac to fall in or to occupy previously arranged positions.

3. CONTROL.

Control of a *Section* by its leader is as a rule carried out verbally. Sections should be practised in following their leaders in irregular formations but under control, in extending to open fire and in the selection of the best fire positions. In these movements, formal orders can be replaced by brief instructions or by signals. The men should be taught to work on quick instructions from the section leader, e.g., "Follow me in file, No. 2 Section," "Across that bridge and line the bank," "Two men out in front to watch that farm," &c., but such instructions should be firm and simple. They require just as much discipline on the part of the men and control on the part of the Leader as close order drill.

Control of a *Platoon* or larger formation is carried out by means of the ordinary field signals detailed in Section 2, with the especial use of the "deploy" and "close" signals.

The whole system can be summarised as follows:—

If a "deploy" signal is given by the Commander, the force under his command shakes out into the *next more open* formation to that in which they were before receiving the signal. If a "close" signal is given, they close into the *next more closed* formation.

Example:—A battalion moving in column of route receives a "deploy" signal from the battalion commander.

The four company commanders would instantly shake out into a square formation.

If, however, the signal to "deploy from the centre" was made, the company commanders would shake out into a diamond formation.

On a second "deploy" signal from the battalion commander each *company* would shake out into platoons in a square or diamond formation.

On a "close" signal, the platoons would close in and form company columns again.

The same principle can be applied by each company or platoon commander to the body under his command.

The advantage of this system lies in the fact that during an approach march, the units can be opened out to avoid loss from shell fire or distant machine gun fire, whilst at the same time retained under the *instant* control of their superior commander. This is done until they are actually committed to the attack, without the detail entailed by sending written or verbal orders or messages.

The actual executive order or signal to shake out must be given by the immediate commanders of the units which actually move.

4. CHANGING DIRECTION.

Signal—"Change direction."

Action taken.—Each company immediately wheels in the required direction.

5. PARTIALLY CHANGING DIRECTION.

Signal.—A half "change direction."

Action taken.—The leading unit on the flank indicated makes a half wheel and then moves on in quick time, whilst the remaining units in line with it conform to its movements at the double until in the new alignment.

The columns in rear, on reaching the same point, act similarly.

6. INCLINING.

Signal.—"Incline."

Action taken.—Each unit makes a half wheel to the flank indicated and then leads on.

Notes.—(i) These formations can be altered or adapted by order or message in the usual way.

(ii) Units, when closing, assume the same relative positions as they were in before deploying, *i.e.*, if ordered to close when retiring, the second and fourth parts come into position in the column in front of the first and third respectively.

(iii) In teaching this system it is recommended that it is first carried out in skeleton fashion with the officers and Section Commanders, using the word of command instead of signal. Then again using signal, and finally with the unit as a whole.

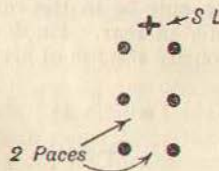
PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION IN FIELD MOVEMENT DRILL.

7. SECTION FORMATIONS.

Before taking up the formations, the instructor should explain to the section that there are four formations used by sections and that they are taken up on the occasions stated. No stereotyped orders are laid down for the exact formation; nor for the executive order to take them up. The following paragraphs are merely an example of how the formations can be taken up at an order from the section leader.

File.—Normal method of advancing when neither firing nor under fire. Section Leader is, as a rule, ahead of his section so that he can "lead" them, as opposed to "directing" them by orders.

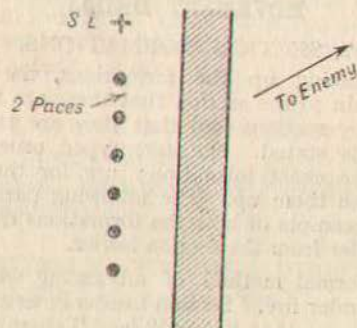
Intervals and distances between ranks and men are normally about 2 paces, thus



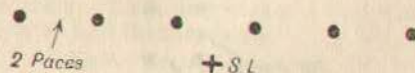
Although this formation is under instant control of the Section Leader, it has the disadvantage that fire can only be opened in an emergency in flank directions and not ahead.

Single File.—Only used when advancing under cover of a wall, along a trench, &c., when file formation would be too conspicuous. Section is more spread out and is, therefore, not under such direct control by its leader. There is always the danger of the whole section being enfiladed by machine gun when in this formation.

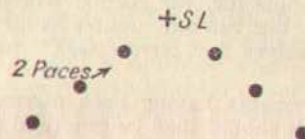
Normal distances are two paces and Section Leader as a rule leads, thus



Line.—The normal extension when actually committed to the assault or when firing in a fixed defence. It gives a clear field of fire for each man. The Section Leader should as a rule be in the centre of his section and may be slightly in rear. He does not fire himself as his duty is to control the fire of his section.



Arrow Head.—This formation is a compromise between line and file, thus



This formation is no more vulnerable to frontal fire than an extended line, whilst against enfilade fire it is less vulnerable. It gives the Section Leader good power of control and manœuvre and is capable of firing in any direction. It can quickly be altered to file or single file when the advance leads through woods, &c., but for men who have not had great experience of land warfare its formation is not so suitable for actual firing as is the line.

8. PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION IN SECTION FORMATIONS.

Although each section must be trained by its leader to respond to any order he gives, the following examples are given as a method of instruction.

Section formed in two ranks with intervals. Section Leader in front. Section turned to a flank and leader takes post in front of the leading file of his section. Section is now in *File formation*.

At the order "Advance in single file," section advances as taught in squad drill. Section is then halted and shown that they are now in *Single file formation*.

At the order "Form Line," numbers 1, 2 and 3 will double up on the right of the leader and numbers 4, 5 and 6 on the left. Numbers 1 and 4 will be nearest to the leader. Each man aligns himself on the leader and the section is then in *Line formation*.

Arrow head can be formed from either of the other three formations. Thus on the order "Form arrow head" from single file, the section will proceed as for "Form line"; but will only double as far as is required to place themselves in "Arrow head" formation from their leader.

These movements having been carried out in slow time at the halt should then be practised with a section advancing. It is advisable to select a piece of rough ground for this exercise so that the Section Leader may be exercised and criticised in the formation he adopts. The enemy must always be represented by some means, e.g., flag, men with blank, painted wooden arrows, and the objective of the section must be carefully explained to each man beforehand.

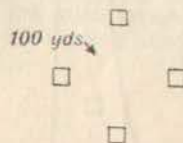
9. PLATOON FORMATIONS.

Since the section formations remain the same whether the section is acting independently or in a Platoon or larger formation, it is convenient that Platoon formations should first be exercised with section leaders only.

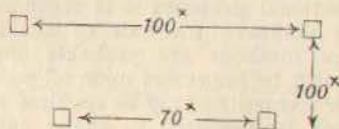
The Instructor should explain to the Section Leaders that when it becomes necessary to shake a platoon out into a more open formation than column of route, the following three formations are used:—

Diamond.—The best formation when advancing against an enemy whose position is not accurately known. Any one point of the diamond may locate the enemy and will at once engage him. The other three sections are then manoeuvred as necessary by the Platoon Commander. Until committed to the attack, platoon headquarters will, as a rule, be with the leading section, which may conveniently be a Lewis gun section. The Platoon Commander may station his midshipman or Platoon Petty Officer with one of the

flank sections, or may retain him with Platoon headquarters so that he can subsequently dispatch him to direct the movement of any sections. The normal distances between sections should be about 100 yards. The formation of each section is constantly varied by its leader to suit the ground over which it is moving. Section Leaders must watch the Platoon Commander, who may vary the formation of his platoon by signals.

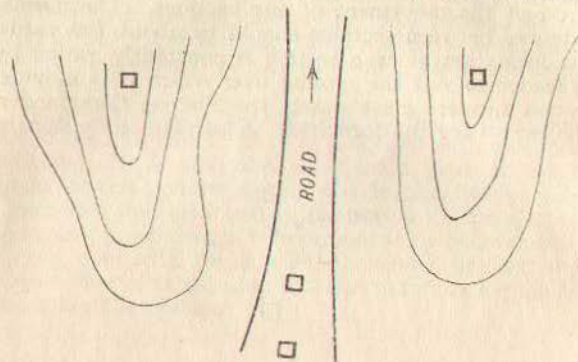


Square.—The normal formation for an attack or for open defence. The two leading sections engage the enemy while the two rear ones are manoeuvred as necessary by the Platoon Commander. Normal distances between sections are 100 yards. Platoon headquarters is, as a rule, with one of the rear (manoeuvre) sections, which may conveniently be a Lewis gun section. The interval between the two rear sections should not be greater than rendered necessary by the enemy's fire.



Y formation is really only a slight modification of square formation. It is useful when a Platoon is forming the advanced guard for a company advancing along a road or through a valley. Platoon headquarters would, as a rule, remain with one of the rear sections, so that

Platoon Commander may dispatch either section (one of which should be a Lewis gun section) to either flank.



10. PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION IN PLATOON FORMATIONS.

The Section Leaders should first be exercised, without their sections, in taking up the various formations. This can well be practised by moving the Platoon Commander and his Section Leaders over a piece of rough country, where the signals of the Platoon Commander and the movements of the Section Leaders can be watched and criticised.

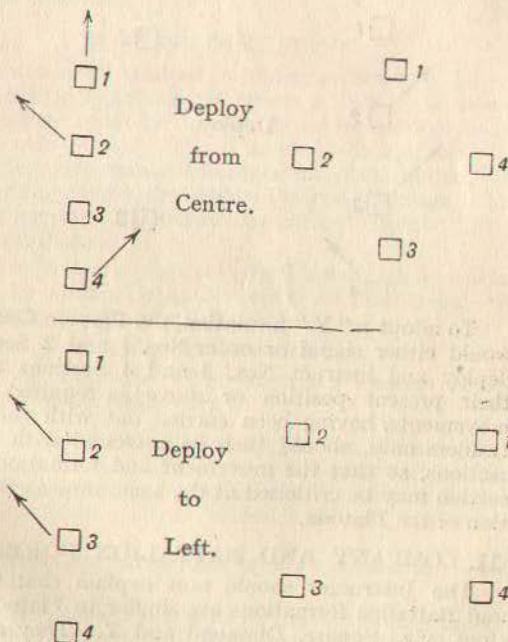
For instructional purposes it is recommended that the following standard methods of shaking out be taught. These methods are probable and effective, but the fact must be impressed upon all concerned that in battle other formations may be required and sections must, therefore, be prepared to shake out into other formations to meet special conditions.

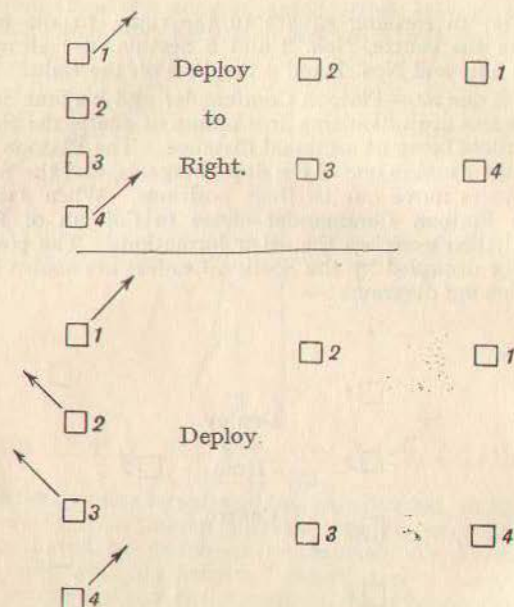
The standard method is as follows :—

(a) In diamond formation, No. 2 Section goes to the left, No. 4 Section to the right, No. 3 Section goes straight on, while No. 1 doubles ahead to the necessary distance.

(b) In forming square to the right, to the left or from the centre, Nos. 2 and 3 Sections are always on the left, and Nos. 1 and 4 Sections on the right.

Example.—Platoon Commander and his four Section Leaders are advancing in Column of route, the Section Leaders being at sectional distance. The Platoon Commander makes one of the deploy signals, and the Section Leaders move out to their positions. When satisfied, the Platoon Commander closes to Column of Route, and then exercises the other formations. The positions to be occupied by the Section Leaders are shown in the following diagrams :—





To adopt a "Y" formation, the Platoon Commander would either signal or order Nos. 1 and 2 Sections to deploy and instruct Nos. 3 and 4 Sections to retain their present position or move as required. These movements, having been carried out with the Section Leaders only, should then be exercised with complete sections, so that the movement and formation of each section may be criticised at the same time as the formation of the Platoon.

11. COMPANY AND BATTALION FORMATIONS.

The Instructor should now explain that Company and Battalion formations are similar to Platoon formations, viz., Square, Diamond and Y. They are taken

up as described for Platoon formations, but intervals and the distances are increased to—

200 yards between Platoons;
400 yards between Companies.

The formation of each section rests with its section leader, that of the Platoon with its Platoon Commander, and that of the Company with its Company Commander. This point must be emphasised as it might appear that a signal from the Battalion Commander ordering the Battalion to adopt a diamond formation is, in addition, the order for each unit to adopt that formation; but this is not the case.

12. FIRE DISCIPLINE.

A Platoon is allotted a definite frontage for an Attack or for Defence, *e.g.*, from a tree to a house. This frontage must be known to every section leader and to every man. The Platoon frontage is NOT sub-divided into minor frontages for each section, but each section covers the whole Platoon frontage. The diagram on page 100 shows the correct distribution of fire from a Platoon.

If when fire is opened by the Platoon on an enemy seen to be advancing under cover of the hedge, the procedure in the Platoon is as follows:—

Platoon commander gives the order—

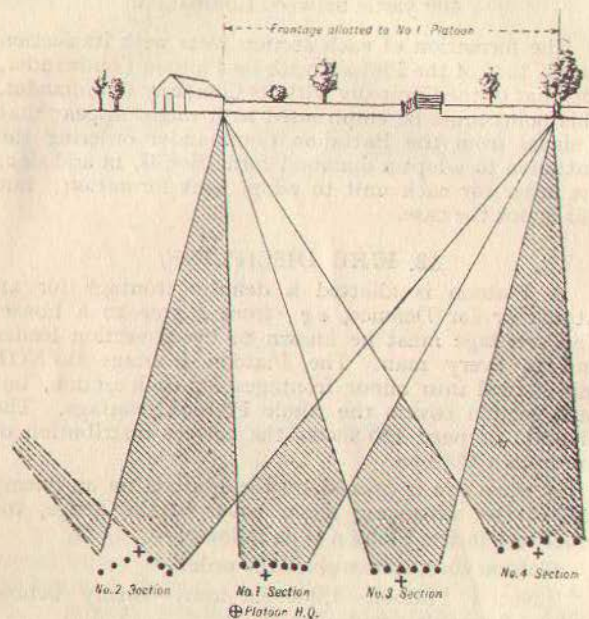
"No. 1 Platoon—1,000—in front—enemy behind hedge—3 rounds rapid—fire."

The Section Leaders then repeat the order to their sections, *e.g.*, "No. 3 Section—1,000—in front—enemy behind hedge—3 rounds rapid—fire." "No. 2 Section—1,000—in front—enemy behind hedge—1 magazine—fire."

The procedure carried out by each section is then as follows:—

Rifle Sections.—Each man in the section divides the Platoon frontage mentally into 6 parts and fires at a part

corresponding approximately to his position in the extension, moving his shots short distances to the right and left of that point.



Lewis Gun Sections.—Lewis gunners fire short bursts at points along the whole frontage—not necessarily from right to left or vice versa; but placing their bursts at different points so that the whole frontage is covered when they have expended the ammunition ordered.

■ By thus distributing the fire of a Platoon, the Platoon Commander can always divert the fire of one or more Sections on to new targets without leaving any of his front uncovered by fire.

Example.—The left-hand Section—No. 2—a Lewis gun section, can be switched on to a machine gun firing at the Platoon from the left flank. No. 2 Section's new line of fire is shown by dotted lines. It will be noticed that the whole of the Platoon's frontage is still covered by fire. When each section has finished the firing ordered (3 rounds from rifles, 1 magazine from Lewis guns), the Platoon Commander may order an alteration in range and a further burst of fire. If he does not do so, Section Leaders will correct the range of their Section and order them to reload.

The following points with regard to fire discipline should be noted :—

(i) Section Leaders do not fire; but control the fire of their Section.

(ii) The order in which a fire order must always be given—

- (a) Unit, *e.g.*, No. 2 Platoon or No. 7 Section.
- (b) Range.
- (c) Brief description of target.
- (d) Ammunition to be expended.
- (e) Order "Fire."

(iii) A hostile machine gun or Lewis gun is always worthy of attention from a Lewis gun, which should, therefore, always be used for that purpose.

(iv) Rapid fire should not be used when slow fire is possible.

(v) Platoon Commander must be prepared to separate the fire of each section as occasion demands. For example, the enemy might try to advance through the hedge in four "Units." In this case the Platoon commander would give each section a definite unit at which to fire.

13. USE OF COVER.

Practical instruction by means of demonstration should be given in the use of ground and cover.

Men must be taught that the most important requirement in cover when firing is that the weapon can be used to the best advantage.

In endeavouring to do so, he should expose himself as little as possible to the enemy's fire; but must understand that if he merely seeks safety and neglects thereby the full use of his weapon, he will be failing in his duty.

If an equally good view can be obtained it is better to fire round the side of cover than over it, as the firer is then less visible.

When firing from behind cover, the man must keep his eyes on the target between each shot, otherwise he may lose sight of the target and may shoot without looking over the sights.

Cover from view which does not also afford cover from fire should not provide a good aiming or ranging mark for the enemy. A hedge or bush, in country where such features are of uncommon occurrence, may become a dangerous trap if the men crowd behind it and the enemy discovers they are there. If lying in the open, all but the necessary movements to load and fire must be avoided, as moving objects catch the eye very easily.

The skyline is always to be avoided.

Instruction in the use of cover should be expanded on the lines given in the "Royal Naval Field Service Pocket Book," Chapter IV, *e.g.*, "Section stalks," "Platoon attacks," &c.

14. SCOUTS.

Reconnaissance carried out by scouts and patrols is divided into three categories:—

(i) *Section Scouts*.—These consist of two men in each section who are sent forward to reconnoitre the ground immediately ahead of their section and to act as an advanced guard to it, keeping within sight of it.

(ii) *Patrols*.—These are used for the protection of larger units and as a rule consist of a complete Platoon

when mounted patrols are not available. They reconnoitre the ground and the enemy beyond the radius of the section scouts, being especially useful to give warning of the presence and movements of the enemy and locate his machine guns.

(iii) *Company Scouts*.—These consist of very carefully selected men who are sent on special missions to gain definite information on important points. Unlike the other two categories, they have not the duty of keeping touch with the unit which they are protecting.

How Scouts should Act.—Scouts should always work in pairs. Thus, one can remain observing while the other signals or goes back with a report. They should move by successive short bounds, one scout advancing while the other remains behind to listen, ready to cover him with fire. Should the forward scout be surprised by overwhelming numbers, it will be the duty of the other to escape with information.

The role of scouts is to observe and report, and when engaged on reconnaissance duties, they must only use their rifles in self defence.

Example of Section Scouts operating ahead of their Section.

Number 6 Section of Number 6 Platoon is detailed to act as the right flank point of a Y being formed by Number 6 Platoon. Number 6 Platoon is acting as advanced guard to B Company, which is advancing along a country lane.

Number 6 section (less scouts) is shown on hill in position (1). The 2 scouts have been sent to examine the iron bridge on far side of the wood and to watch it when No. 6 section advances through the wood. The two scouts advance in turn by 50-yard bounds to positions marked, *i.e.*, (2) in churchyard, (3) cottages in wheat field, (4) in hop field, (5) and (6) on small hill overlooking the bridge. The two scouts must always be covering each other, and must always be able to obtain a view of their section leader. The scouts can

On the March.

At the "**Slope**," except—

(h) During Guard mounting.

(k) When moving with a Guard of Honour in the vicinity of the place where the Guard is to be mounted.

(l) When paying or returning compliments.

(m) On the Review Ground.

At the Double.

The sword will be brought down as for returning and laid alongside the outside of the scabbard. The sword and scabbard will be grasped with the left hand between the rings of the scabbard, the points being to the rear.

4. GUARDS OF HONOUR.

The officer in charge will salute the inspecting officer when he approaches to inspect the Guard after the General Salute. He will again salute when the inspection has been completed.

5. MAKING A REPORT WITH SWORD DRAWN.

Approach the Senior Officer with the sword at the "**Carry**." Halt at three paces and make the salute. The Senior Officer will acknowledge by coming to the "**Recover**" and "**Carry**."

If the report is of considerable length, the Junior Officer will come back to the "**Recover**" and "**Carry**" before reporting, otherwise he will remain at the salute.

WITH SWORD SHEATHED.

6. POSITION OF ATTENTION. (Plate 29.)

Atten—tion. The sword will be held upright by the side, the shoe of the scabbard resting on the

ground close to the left foot and just in front of the heel. The grip will be grasped between the thumb and forefinger of the left hand, elbow to the rear.

7. POSITION OF STAND AT EASE. (Plate 31.)

Stand at—Ease. Both legs to be kept straight. The left foot to be carried about one foot's length to the left, the scabbard being carried off with the left leg. The shoe of the scabbard will rest on the ground close to the left foot, and just in front of the heel. The palm of the left hand will rest on top of the hilt, which will be pushed to the front, the right arm hanging by the side.

8. THE QUICK MARCH. (Plate 32.)

Quick—March. Raise the sword smartly with the left hand at the first pace without stooping or disturbing the position of the body, and grasp the scabbard at the point where the sword balances when held at an angle of 45 degrees. Thumb and fingers round the scabbard, arm fully extended, rings of scabbard downwards and point forward.

9. THE HALT.

Halt. Lower the sword to the ground and assume the position of *Attention*.

WITH SWORD DRAWN.

10. DRAWING SWORDS.

Draw—Swords. Grasp the hilt with the right hand and the scabbard with the left.

Two. Draw out smartly and rest the sword on the right shoulder in a sloping position, keeping the fore-arm horizontal and slightly relaxing the fingers of the right hand, drop the left hand to the side; this is termed the position of *Slope Swords*.

Note.—When the sword is drawn, the scabbard, if attached by slings, is to be hooked up.

11. CARRY SWORDS.

Carry—Swords. Tighten the grasp on the sword and bring the sword to a perpendicular position, fore-arm horizontal, upper arm close to the side. (Plate 33.)

Note.—When the sword is at the *Carry*, mounted, the position is with the hilt resting on the right thigh, blade perpendicular, wrist rounded so as to incline the edge slightly to the left, the grasp of the lower fingers slightly relaxed, the little finger in rear of the hilt.

12. RECOVER SWORDS. (Plate 34.)

Recover—Swords. Raise the sword until the thumb is as high as the mouth, guard to the left, blade vertical, and in front of the centre of the face.

Carry—Swords. As before.

13. SLOPE SWORDS. (Plate 35.)

Slope—Swords. Release the grasp of the last three fingers and without disturbing the position of the hand, allow the back of the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder midway between the neck and the point of the shoulder.

14. STAND AT EASE.

Stand at—Ease. Carry the left foot off about one foot's length to the left, at the same time bring the sword to the *Slope* position. See Plate 31.

Atten—tion. Spring to *Attention*, retaining the sword in the *Slope* position.

15. STAND EASY.

Stand—Easy. Carry the left foot off about one foot's length to the left, at the same time bring the sword down to a position with the point resting on the



Position of "Attention" with the Sword sheathed.



Fig. iv—Saluting with the Sword on the March.
4th Motion.

ground between the feet, edge to the eight, blade vertical, left hand grasping the back of the right.

Atten—tion. Spring to *Attention* and resume the position of the *Slope*.

16. RETURN SWORDS.

Return—Sword. Grasp the scabbard with the left hand, and enter the point one inch.

Two. Return the sword smartly, and assume the position of *Attention*.

Note.—When the sword is returned it is not to be hooked up unless the men are marching at ease.

17. SALUTING WITH THE SWORD.

At the Halt.

Present—Arms. Bring the sword to the *Recover* at the first motion of the rifles, at the third motion lower the sword smartly to the *Salute*, the point of the sword to be 12 inches from the ground, and directed in the direction of the right foot; right arm straight, hand just behind the thigh, thumb flat on handle of sword.

Note.—Mounted officers will lower the sword to the front to the full extent of the arm, blade 3 inches below the knee, hand directly under the shoulder.

Slope—Arms. Bring the sword to the *Recover* at the first motion of the rifles and to the *Carry* at the second.

On the March. (Plates 36, Figs. i–iv.)

Eyes—Right. Carry the sword direct to the right to the full extent of the arm, hand as high as the shoulder, back of the hand to the rear, blade perpendicular, edge to the right, and turn the head and eyes to the right. Grasp the scabbard with the left hand.

Two. Bring the sword by a circular motion to the *Recover*, keeping the elbow as high as the shoulder.

Three. Still keeping the elbow the height of the shoulder, bring the hilt to the right shoulder, hand as high as the elbow; during this motion, let the finger nails come in line with the edge of the sword.

Four. Lower the sword to the same position as for the *Salute when halted*.

Notes.—(i) The above four motions to be combined into one easy movement, the *Salute* being completed in four paces, the head being turned well towards the reviewing officer, whilst passing him.

(ii) Mounted officers will salute as above.

18. EYES FRONT.

Eyes—Front. Bring the sword to the *Recover* and then to the *Carry*, working the sword with the left foot, and dwelling a pause between the two motions.

Note.—The head and eyes to be turned with the first motion.

19. FUNERAL EXERCISES.

Reverse—Arms. *Recover* swords; then drop the point of the sword downwards under the right arm, edge upwards, handle grasped between the right thumb and bottom of the forefinger, fingers extended and close together, thumb as high as the mouth. (Plate 37.)

Quick—March. Drop the point of the sword and come to the *Slope*.

Slow—March. Reverse arms without coming to the *Recover*.

Rest on your Arms—Reversed. Drop the point of the sword between the feet, place the left hand over the right, the head to lean on the breast.

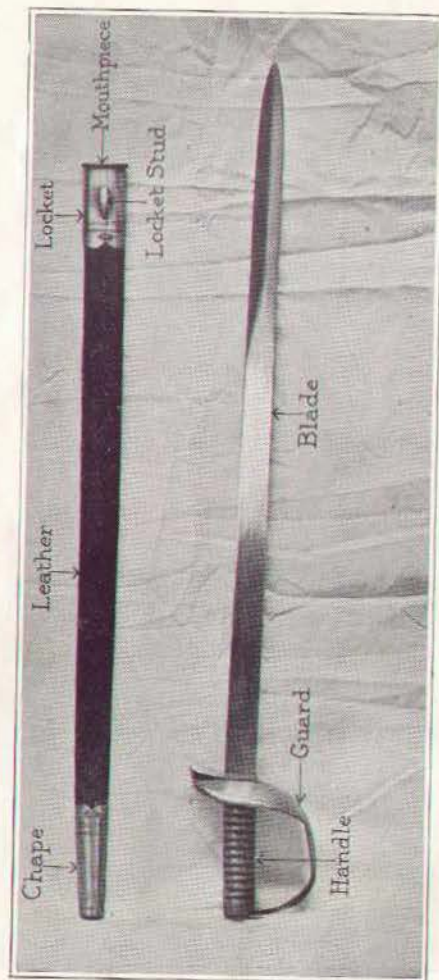
Atten—tion. Raise the head.

Reverse—Arms. As usual, but without coming to the *Recover*.

Rest on your Arms—Reversed. As above.



Position of "Reverse" with the Sword.



Names of parts of a Cutlass.

Attention. As above.

Slope—Arms. 1st Motion—come to the *Recover*.
4th Motion—come to the *Carry*.

Present—Arms. Recover and salute with the first and third motions of the rifle.

20. DRILL FOR LINING STREETS.

Rest on your Arms—Reversed. 1st Motion—drop point of sword between the feet, edge to the right.
2nd Motion—place left hand over right.
3rd Motion—remain steady.
4th Motion—droop the head.

Attention. Raise the head.

Present—Arms. As above.

CUTLASS DRILL.

21. POSITION OF ATTENTION WITH CUTLASS SHEATHED.

Attention. The scabbard to be gripped by the left hand, the first finger extended down the outside, Cutlass to be up and down and close in to the left leg.

22. STAND AT EASE WITH CUTLASS SHEATHED.

Stand at—Ease. Both legs to be kept straight. The left foot to be carried about one foot's length to the left. The hands to remain as in position at *Attention*.

23. MARCHING WITH CUTLASS SHEATHED.

As in Part IV, Section 8.

24. DRAWING CUTLASS.

As in Part IV, Section 10.

25. STAND AT EASE WITH CUTLASS DRAWN.

As in Part IV, Section 15.

26. ATTENTION WITH CUTLASS DRAWN.

Attention. Spring to attention, cut away the left hand to the side and bring the cutlass to the slope.

Note.—When on march with cutlass drawn,

(i) *at the quick*—left arm to be swung as taught in squad drill.

(ii) *at the double*—bring the cutlass down as for returning but do not enter it into scabbard, grasp scabbard with cutlass along it with the left hand, point of cutlass and chape being to the rear. Left hand should be just below the frog.

27. RETURNING CUTLASS.

As in Part IV, Section 16.

28. INSPECTION OF CUTLASS.

Draw—Swords. As before detailed.

Port—Swords. Bring the cutlass to a slanting position in front of the body, edge to the right, and seize it with the forefinger and thumb of the left hand, the fingers closed, both elbows close to the body. Right forearm horizontal and straight to the front, blade of the cutlass crossing in line with the point of the left shoulder. (Plate 39.)

Slope—Swords. As before detailed.

Return—Swords. As before detailed.

29. CEREMONIAL.

Petty officers and men on ceremonial parades armed with cutlasses do not draw them.

The petty officer in charge of a funeral firing party will draw and proceed as laid down in Sword Exercises, Part IV, Section 19.



Inspection of Cutlasses.

CUTLASS EXERCISE.

The following exercise is intended to teach men the use of the cutlass in offence and defence.

This Exercise is formed on the following principles :—

(i) That the first guard is the most advantageous position which a man armed with a cutlass can assume for the purpose of attack or defence.

(ii) That as a point can be returned with far greater rapidity and much more deadly effect than a cut, a point is invariably to be returned after guarding a point or cut delivered by an opponent.

(iii) That after delivering a point or cut at an opponent, a guard is immediately to be assumed to meet his return point.

The exercise consists of three *Guards*, one *Point*, and four *Cuts*, and is intended to be employed with the sword in either hand.

The party falls in in two ranks with swords sheathed, and are numbered.

Note.—The Instructor is himself to perform each movement before the class, taking care that it is correctly performed before passing on to the next, and it is to be impressed on the men that their eyes should always be fixed on the eyes of their opponents.

Draw—Swords. As before detailed.

Note.—The front rank is marched across the deck and turned about, or single rank is formed in the usual manner.

Prepare for Exercise. A caution.

**From the
Right (Left or
No. — File)**

—March.

The named file remains steady, the remainder turn outwards and step off, each man glancing over the inner shoulder towards the named file; and when at three paces from the position in which the man in his rear has halted, he will halt, turn inwards and dress up, or back, as necessary, to give room for cutting.

Second. Without moving the body, head, or eyes, raise the guard to just above the crown of the head, slightly increasing the bend of the elbow, the blade bearing away to the left front, the point slightly drooped, the edge upwards and to the front.

Third. Without moving the body, head, or eyes, bend the right elbow and bring the right upper arm close in to the right side, so that the guard is brought off to the right and midway between elbow and shoulder, the blade, with the point raised, to be inclined slightly to left front.

First. As before detailed.

Slope—Swords. Bring the left foot up to the right and resume the position of *Slope Swords*.

The instructor is to explain after assuming each guard himself what its intention is, thus:—

The *first guard* defends both sides from the elbow downwards from cuts or points, the sword being moved slightly right or left to meet the attack.

The *second guard* defends the head and the left side from high cuts or points.

The *third guard* defends the right side from high cuts or points.

In working up the several guards from each other the instructor will, as often as necessary, bring the men back to the former position by the orders *First*, *Second*, or *Third*, on which the men resume the position of the named guard.

THE LUNGE.

Before proceeding to the pointing and cutting practices, the men are to be thoroughly instructed in how to lunge forward when pointing or cutting, and it is to be impressed upon them that an effective point is *entirely* dependent on the lunge, and an effective cut also, but to a less extent.

Guard. As detailed in the *Guarding practice*.

Lunge. Step out smartly a short pace with the right foot, keep the left foot firm and flat on the

deck; straighten the left knee and bend the right knee well forward, keep the body upright, head erect and eyes on those of the opponent; straighten the right arm but keep the sword fast.

Care must be taken that the men do not over-reach themselves; the whole weight of the body is to be thrown on the right foot.

First. Step back smartly with the right foot and resume the position of the *first guard*.

Slope—Swords. As before detailed.

THE POINTING PRACTICE.

It is to be explained to the men that in carrying out this practice it is assumed that the opponent after guarding their points would return a point at once and therefore that after delivering the point a guard should be instantly assumed which would meet the supposed counter attack.

From the *first guard* a low point should be delivered and from the *second* and *third guards* a higher one; these are indicated in the practice by a point at the waist and throat respectively.

On no account is the arm to be drawn back preparatory to pointing; there is no necessity for it if the lunge is properly performed.

Pointing Practice. A caution.

Guard. As detailed in the *Guarding practice*.

Point. Lunge and at the same point as quickly as possible at the centre of the opponent's waist, the sword and arm being brought as nearly as possible in a straight line.

First. Step back smartly with the right foot and resume the position of the *first guard*.

Second. As detailed in the *Guarding practice*.

Point. As detailed from the *first guard* but pointing at the opponent's throat.

Second. Step back smartly with the right foot and resume the position of the *second guard*.

Third. As detailed in the *Guarding practice*.

Point. As detailed from the *second guard*.

Third. Step back smartly with the right foot and resume the position of the *third guard*.

First. As detailed in the *Guarding practice*.

Slope—Swords. As before detailed.

In working up the points from the several guards, the Instructor is to practise the men in quickly resuming *either guard* after pointing by giving the order *Point*, followed immediately by *First*, *Second*, or *Third*, not necessarily in the order in which they are arranged in the drill. This is to accustom them to repelling any form of counter attack.

THE CUTTING PRACTICE.

It is to be explained to the men, that as a general rule *cutting* should be carried out from the *first guard only*, as that is the most favourable position for this form of attack.

Cutting Practice. A caution.

Guard. As detailed in the *Guarding practice*.

Cut One. Lunge, and at the same time raise the arm very slightly, turn the point of the sword upwards and to the right and cut diagonally downwards from right to left at the opponent's left cheek; stay the sword as soon as the point clears the opponent's body.

First. As detailed in the *Pointing practice*.

Cut Two. As detailed in cut one, but turning the point of the sword upwards and to the left and cutting diagonally downwards from left to right at the opponent's right cheek.

First. As before detailed.

Cut Three. Lunge, and at the same time without raising the arm, turn the point of the

sword well off to the right, and cut from right to left across the opponent's waist; stay the sword as soon as the point clears the opponent's body.

First. As before detailed.

Cut Four. As detailed in cut three, but turning the point of the sword well off to the left, and cutting from left to right across the opponent's waist.

First. As detailed in the *Pointing practice*.

Slope—Swords. As before detailed.

In working up the cuts the instructor is to practise the men in quickly resuming *any guard* after cutting, by following the order to cut immediately by *First*, *Second*, or *Third*, but always assuming the *first guard* before again cutting.

THE GENERAL PRACTICE.

The object of this practice is to teach the men to combine the several methods of attack and defence.

General Practice. A caution.

Guard.

Cut One.

First.

Point.

First.

Cut Two.

Second.

Point.

First.

Cut Three.

Third.

Point.

First.

Cut Four.

First.

Slope—

Swords.

} As before detailed.

Note.—At inspections or reviews the whole party should prove together.

THE ATTACK AND DEFENCE PRACTICE.

The objects desired to be obtained by the *Attack* and *Defence Practice* which is carried out with single-sticks are to impress on the men that :—First—having guarded any cut or point delivered by an adversary, they should *instantly* return a point, and Second—after delivering a cut or point they must be prepared to meet the return point with a guard.

Attack and Defence Practice. } A caution.

From the Right (Left, or No. — File)—March. The front rank man of the named file turns about, the rear rank man stands fast; the remainder turn outwards, and step off, each man glancing over the inner shoulder towards the named file, and when at three paces distance from the position in which the man in his rear has halted, he will halt and turn inwards.

Half Left (or Right)—Turn. Each man will turn towards his opponent.

In the following exercises, when at the first guard the swords when in the right hand are to be disengaged to the right and when in the left hand to the left and the opposing men should be at such distance apart that when in the position of the lunge the points of the single-sticks should just reach the centres of the waists. Each section is to be gone through with the single-stick in each hand.

In the 2nd and 3rd sections the sticks are to be disengaged after cutting, but not in the 4th and 5th.

<i>Instructor.</i>	<i>Front (or rear) rank.</i>	<i>Rear (or front) rank.</i>
First Section.		
Point, Point, and Guard.	A caution.	A caution.
Guard.	As in guarding practice.	As in guarding practice.
Front (or Rear) Rank, Point.	As in pointing practice (at the waist).	Parry the point with the first guard.

<i>Instructor.</i>	<i>Front (or rear) rank.</i>	<i>Rear (or front) rank.</i>
Point.	Parry the point with the first guard.	As in pointing practice (at the waist).
Guard.	Resume the first guard.	Resume the first guard.
Slope—Swords.	As usual.	As usual.

Second Section.

Cut one, Point and Guard.	A caution.	A caution.
Front (or Rear) Rank, Cut One.	As before detailed.	As before detailed.
	As in cutting practice (at the left (or right) cheek).	Defend with the second guard.
Point.	Parry the point with the second guard.	As in pointing practice (at the throat).
Guard.	Resume the first guard.	Resume the first guard.
Slope—Swords.	As usual.	As usual.

Third Section.

Cut Two, Point, and Guard.	A caution.	A caution.
Front (or Rear) Rank, Cut Two.	As before detailed.	As before detailed.
	As in cutting practice (at the right (or left) cheek).	Defend with the third guard.
Point.	Parry the point with the second guard.	As in pointing practice (at the throat).

<i>Instructor.</i>	<i>Front (or rear) rank.</i>	<i>Rear (or front) rank.</i>
Guard.	Resume the first guard.	Resume the first guard.
Slope— Swords.	As usual.	As usual.
Fourth Section.		
Cut Three, Point, and Guard.	A caution.	A caution.
Front (or Rear) Rank, Cut Three.	As before detailed. As in cutting practice (at the waist).	As before detailed. Defend with the first guard.
Point.	Parry the point with the first guard.	As in pointing practice (at the waist).
Guard.	Resume the first guard.	Resume the first guard.
Slope— Swords.	As usual.	As usual.
Fifth Section.		
Cut Four, Point, and Guard.	A caution.	A caution.
Front (or Rear) Rank, Cut Four.	As before detailed. As in cutting practice (at the waist).	As before detailed. Defend with the first guard.
Point.	Parry the point with the first guard.	As in pointing practice (at the waist).
Guard.	Resume the first guard.	Resume the first guard.
Slope— Swords.	As usual.	As usual.

The foregoing sections having been thoroughly performed with the single-stick in either hand are now to be exercised in quick time; the Instructor, after giving the caution *Attack and Defence practice in quick time* and giving the order *Guard*, will name the cut or point from which each section is commenced and the rank that is to lead off, thus:—

<i>Instructor.</i>	<i>Front (or rear) rank.</i>	<i>Rear (or front) rank.</i>
Front Rank, Cut Two.	The named rank cuts as directed, parries the return point, and returns to first guard.	The other rank guards the cut, returns a point and returns to first guard.
Slope— Swords.	As usual.	As usual.

LOOSE PLAY.

Before commencing this practice the men are to be instructed how, when at the first guard, to advance or retire. This is to be practised with the sword in each hand.

Advance. Without altering the position of the body or sword and keeping the eyes on those of the opponent, quickly bring the foot in rear a short pace forward, and then advance the foot in front an equal distance.

Retire. Without altering the position of the body or sword and keeping the eyes on those of the opponent, quickly bring the foot in front a short pace back, and then move back the foot in rear an equal distance.

In both advancing and retiring the relative positions of the feet, as detailed in the *Guard*, are to be maintained.

The men being perfect in the foregoing exercises, should now commence loose play. Only two opponents are to engage at the same time, the Instructor watching

most carefully for any defects in their modes of attack and defence, and pointing them out. When a hit is received, the man hit is at once to come to the *Recover*, and then drop the point of his sword in acknowledgment.

It is most important that the following points should be very clearly explained to the men :—

The eye should be fixed on that of the opponent, the weight of the body being divided equally on both feet, the proper distance kept by advancing or retiring with rapidity; every effort to be used for the purpose of taking off the attention of the opponent and causing him to expose a weak point. It must *especially* be remembered that a point can be returned very much quicker than a cut, and with far more effect; therefore when a man has guarded a cut or point, he should *instantly* return a point; the first guard should always be resumed when the swords are disengaged. During the attack if a man sees a weak point in his opponent more open to the delivery of a cut than a point, he should, of course, attack with a cut, but having guarded a cut or point he should always return a point *instantly*.

PART V.

GUARDS AND SENTRIES (other than Ceremonial Guards and Guards of Honour), MARKS OF RESPECT, FUNERALS.

GUARDS AND SENTRIES.

(Other than Ceremonial Guards and Guards of Honour.)

1. GUARDS—WHEN TO TURN OUT.

Guards will turn out :—

- (a) In cases of Alarm.
- (b) On the approach of an Armed party.
- (c) On the approach of :—

A member of the Royal Family;

A Flag Officer or Commodore in uniform or officers of equivalent rank in the other services, when in uniform.

A Civil Governor within the limits of his jurisdiction.

- (d) Once a day on the approach of their own Commanding Officer, irrespective of his rank.

- (e) Reveille and Sunset (for inspection by the Officer in Charge).

Guards will not turn out after Sunset nor before Reveille except in cases of alarm or on the approach of an armed party.

2. A GUARD FALLING IN.

When Guards turn out they will fall in with sloped arms and bayonets fixed. When the Guard is commanded by an Officer he will be three paces in front of the centre of the Guard, other officers will take post as in line: when by a Petty Officer, he will fall in on the right of the Guard.

A Petty Officer in charge of a Guard will not fix his bayonet, but will conform to the movements of the men's rifles. If an officer is in charge, the Petty Officer will fix his bayonet with the remainder. A Petty Officer's guard consists of any number of men below 21.

3. COMPLIMENTS PAID BY GUARDS ON TURNING OUT.

The personages mentioned in Section 1, para. (c) above will be saluted in accordance with K.R. & A.I., Articles 131 to 139.

Armed parties and the Commanding Officer on the occasion of para. (d) above will be saluted by a Present Arms, but no bugle or band.

No compliments are to be paid after Sunset or before Reveille.

4. GUARDS ON THE MARCH.

Guards, including reliefs, rounds, and patrols, will march with sloped arms and bayonets fixed. In wet weather arms will be carried at the secure, but bayonets will not be fixed.

Guards, rounds, and reliefs on the march, meeting Their Majesties The King and Queen, or either of them, will be ordered to halt, turn in the required direction and Present Arms. To other persons entitled to a salute they will pass on with Sloped Arms, paying the compliment of Eyes Right or Eyes Left as required. The latter compliment will also be paid by a Guard on the march passing Their Majesties when driving in a motor car.

5. RELIEVING A GUARD.

The new guard will advance in line, with arms at the Slope, towards the front of the old guard and will be halted when distant from it 15 paces, or, if this is not possible, six paces on the left. The old guard will Present Arms and return to the Slope. The new guard will return the salute. The old guard will stand at ease followed by the new guard. The new guard will then be detailed and the first relief sent out. A Petty Officer of the old guard will be detailed to go out with them and bring in the old guard. When the men relieved have returned, the old guard will move off, the new guard presenting arms. The new guard will move off as necessary.

If it is necessary to pay compliments during guard mounting, words of command will be given to both guards by the Senior Officer or Petty Officer on parade.

6. RELIEVING AND POSTING SENTRIES.

On the approach of the relief, the sentry, with rifle at the Slope, will place himself in front of the sentry box. The petty officer of the relief will proceed as follows:—

Relief—Halt. At about six paces from the sentry the relief will halt, the new sentry will then move out from the relief and fall in on the left of the old sentry, facing in the same direction; the old sentry will then turn over his orders, the petty officer seeing they are correctly given and understood.

Pass. The old sentry will move to his place in the relief, and the new sentry will close two paces to his right.

Relief, Quick—March. The relief will be marched off.

When a sentry who is to be posted on a new post has reached the post assigned to him, he will be ordered to halt and face in the required direction. The petty officer will then read and explain the orders to him.

The object for which he is to be posted, the front of his post, and the extent of his beat, will be clearly pointed out to a sentry when first posted.

Sentries must not quit their arms, lounge or converse with anyone on any pretence, neither may they stand in their sentry boxes in good, or even moderate weather.

Sentries are to patrol with arms at the Slope.

A sentry marching his post, on arriving at the limit of his post, will turn to his front, and then turn again as necessary.

7. MARCHING RELIEFS.

Reliefs of fewer than four men will be formed in single rank; when of four men or upwards, they will be formed into two ranks. (In streets or narrow places, reliefs should always be marched in single file.) When marching in line, the petty officer will be on the right; when in file (or as in file) he will be on the right of the rear file (or man).

8. SENTRIES CHALLENGING.

A sentry will only challenge a person or party approaching his post, when it is necessary for his own safety, when he is doubtful as to whether the person or party approaching is authorised to pass, when it is ordered for a special reason, such as in the case of a sentry posted on a fortress or prison, or when there is a countersign to be delivered.

When challenging on the part of a sentry is necessary, it will be carried out as follows:—

When a person or party approaches the post, the sentry will, as soon as the person or party is within speaking distance, call out, **Halt; Advance One** (or **Halt; Advance One, and give the countersign**), at the same time coming to the *On Guard* (on posts where there is a likelihood of his being rushed). If the person or party approaching gives a satisfactory reply, the sentry will say **Pass Friend; All's Well**; remaining *On Guard* till the person or party has passed.

If in answer to the challenge the sentry receives the reply *Visiting Rounds*, he will call out **Stand Rounds; Advance One** (or **Advance One and give the countersign**), the sentry remaining *On Guard* until he has identified the person approaching or until he has received the countersign. When satisfied the sentry will say **Pass Rounds; All's Well**, sloping arms as they pass or visit him.

9. SALUTES BY SENTRIES.

Present Arms.—A sentry will "Present Arms" to:—

(a) All Armed parties.

(b) Officers of or above the rank of Lieutenant-Commander or officers of equivalent rank in the other services.

(c) Funerals.

The compliment of Present Arms is not to be paid after Sunset or before Reveille. During this period the above officers and parties are to be saluted at the "Slope" (*see below*).

The Salute at the Slope.—A sentry will salute as shown on Plate 13:—

(d) All officers of the three Services not entitled to the compliment of "Present Arms."

(e) All Unarmed parties unless commanded by an officer entitled to the compliment of "Present Arms."

Exceptions to the above rules are:—

(f) In the case of sentries furnished from a Royal Guard, sub-para. (a) above is to be amended to read "Armed parties of approximately 100 or more," and sub-para. (b) amended to read "Members of the Royal Family."

(g) In the case of sentries mounted over the quarters of a Flag Officer, sub-para. (b) is to be amended to read "Officers of Flag Rank or officers of equivalent rank in the other services."

(h) In both the above cases these sentries will salute at the Slope other officers and parties normally entitled to a salute.

(k) In very wet weather, sentries in their sentry boxes will salute by coming to Attention.

10. EQUIVALENT RANKS IN THE SERVICES.

Naval Equivalent.	ARMY.		AIR FORCE.	
	Equivalent rank.	Badge on cuff or shoulder strap.	Equivalent Rank.	Distinguishing marks on cuff.
Commissioned Officer from Warrant Rank.	2nd Lieut.	One star.	Pilot Officer.	Half ring.
Sub-Lieutenant.	Lieutenant.	Two stars.	Flying Officer (or Observer Officer).	One ring.
Lieutenant.	Captain.	Three stars.	Flight Lieutenant.	Two rings.
Lieut.-Commander.	Major.	Crown.	Squadron Leader.	Two and a half rings.
Commander.	Lieut.-Colonel.	Crown and one star.	Wing Commander.	Three rings.
Captain.	Colonel.	Crown and two stars.	Group Captain.	Four rings.
Commodore, 1st and 2nd class.	Col.-Commandant. Col. on the Staff.	Crown and three stars.	Air Commodore.	Thick ring.
Rear-Admiral.	Major-General.	Crossed sword and baton and star.	Air Vice-Marshal.	Thick ring and one ring.
Vice-Admiral.	Lieutenant-General.	Crossed sword and baton and crown.	Air Marshal.	Thick ring and two rings.
Admiral.	General.	Crossed sword and baton, crown and star.	Air Chief Marshal.	Thick ring and three rings.
Admiral of the Fleet.	Field Marshal.	Crossed sword and baton inside oak leaves.	Marshal of the Royal Air Force.	Thick ring and four rings.

Commissioned Officers of the Royal Marines will rank, at all times, according to seniority, with Officers of the Army of the same titles.

MARKS OF RESPECT TO BE PAID BY PARTIES OF SEAMEN WHEN LANDED.

11. DEFINITIONS.

In the following paragraphs the expressions "Armed" and "Unarmed" parties include the under-mentioned:—

Armed party.—All parties carrying arms, except Guards of Honour and Ceremonial Guards.

Unarmed party.—Parties without arms. Parties wearing side arms only.

12. COMPLIMENTS TO BE PAID AND RETURNED.

By an Armed party commanded by an officer (referred to below as C.O.).

When passing or being passed by.

Compliment to be paid.

- (a) H.M. the King and H.M. the Queen, except when driving in a motor car. Halt and Present Arms. Officers salute with the hand if bayonets are unfixed and by drawing and "Carrying" swords if bayonets are fixed.
- (b) As at (a) but driving in a motor car. If halted, Present Arms. If on the march, pass on with arms at the "Slope," order "Eyes Right" (or Left). In both cases officers salute as for (a).
- (c) Officers of or above the rank of Captain, R.N., or the equivalent ranks in the other services if senior to the C.O. If halted, Slope Arms. If on the march, "Eyes Right" (or Left). In both cases officers salute as for (a).

When passing or being passed by.	Compliment to be paid.
(d) Other officers senior to the C.O.	Party called to Attention, Slope Arms if halted. Officers salute with the hand or by "Carrying" swords if drawn.
(e) An Armed party or Guard of Honour with Colours uncased.	As for (b), the salute being given to the Colours.
(f) An Armed party or Guard of Honour without Colours or with Colours cased.	As for (d).
(g) A sentry or guard.	As for (c).
(h) An officer or rating, or Unarmed party, who salute the C.O.	Acknowledged by C.O. with the hand or by "Carrying" his sword if drawn.
(k) A funeral cortege	As for (c). Not applicable to a Funeral Guard or Firing party, who act as laid down in Funeral drill.

Notes.—(i) The above rules apply to Armed parties carrying Colours uncased, except the actual Escort Company. The latter conform to the orders for a Guard of Honour and only pay the compliments laid down in the foregoing table at (a), (b) and (e).

(ii) Parties marching with arms at the "Secure" in wet weather will Slope Arms for the purpose of paying the compliments laid down at (a), (b) and (e). On meeting other officers and parties they will remain at the "Secure" and act as an Unarmed party. (See below.)

By an Unarmed party commanded by an Officer.

Compliments are to be paid and returned as laid down in the table above, omitting all reference to arms and swords.

By an Armed party commanded by a Rating.

An Armed party commanded by a Rating will pay compliments to the personages and parties shown in the above table as follows:—

For (a), (b) and (e) the party will act as laid down in the table, the Rating in command saluting with the hand.

On passing or being passed by the remaining personages or parties shown in the table the Rating in command will, if halted, order his party to "Slope Arms," or, if on the march, he will order "Eyes—Right" (or Left). In both cases he will salute with the hand.

By an Unarmed party commanded by a Rating.

Compliments are to be paid as for an Armed party, omitting all references to arms.

FUNERALS.

13. GENERAL RULES.

The strength of the parties to be landed is shown in the table given in Section 16 below. The following are required in addition:—

Gun's Crew - Petty Officer (as No. 1) and 17 men.

Bearerers - 6 or 8 men; may be messmates.

Band - Drums to be muffled.

Mourners - Who include:—

(a) Relatives and intimate friends of the deceased;

(b) Deceased's messmates;

(c) Representative officers and men from each branch of the service borne in the ship.

All the above will be known as the Funeral party. The officer detailed to command the Escort will be responsible for the conduct of the funeral as a whole.

The Guard, when landed, will conform to the movements of the Firing party until approaching the grave-side, when they will be moved off to some convenient

position by their own officer. The Guard will remain at the "Slope" during the three volleys and will fix bayonets independently. They will Present Arms with the Firing party. The officer in command is to be junior to the officer in command of the Firing party.

When on the march the junior ratings or ranks in the Escort will lead, the senior officer bringing up the rear. The same applies to the officers and men included in the mourners.

At an Officer's funeral, his cocked hat and sword will be placed on top of the coffin.

Officers as pall bearers will march on each side of the gun carriage (or hearse) and will wear swords. They should be of the same rank as the deceased and are usually only detailed in the case of officers of Commander's rank or above.

Officers wearing swords will remove headdresses (except when in charge of the firing party) at the commencement of the service, and replace them at the end of the service, before the volleys are fired. When at the graveside they will stand to Attention and Salute during the sounding of the Commodore's Salute. When the coffin is placed on or removed from the gun carriage or passes them, they will Salute with the hand.

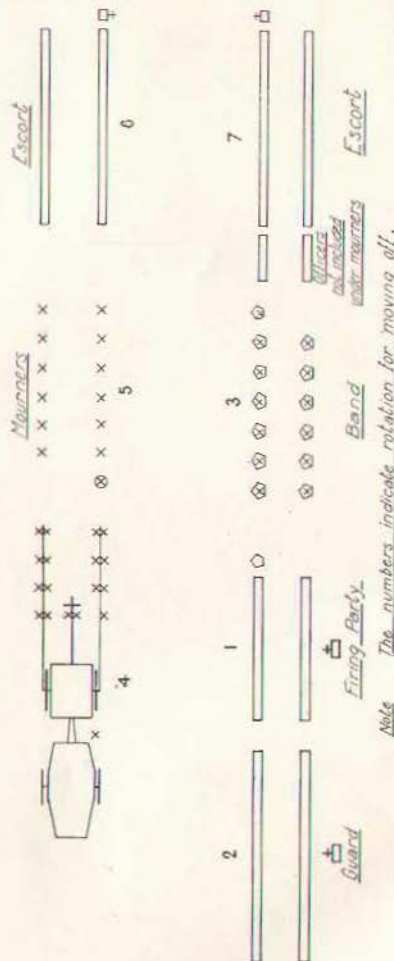
14. EQUIPMENT.

Unless orders to the contrary are issued, the various parties are to wear the following equipment:—

Firing Party	-	Drill order and gaiters.
		Petty Officer, cutlass and gaiters.
Guard	-	Drill order and gaiters.
Gun's crew	-	Gaiters.
Mourners	-	} Nil.
Escort	-	
Bearers	-	

15. PROCEDURE AT A FUNERAL.

The various parties will be drawn up outside the building from which the procession is to start, as



To face page 135

shown on Plate 40. The numbers on this Plate indicate the sequence in which the various parties move off. Plate 40 shows the formation if the procession is to move off to the right. If to the left, the Bugler would be on the left of the Firing party, the gun's crew facing left and all other parties on the left of the Firing party in the same formation and sequence.

The Firing party and Guard will be fallen in at one pace intervals, with arms at the "Slope." Officers in command having their swords drawn and at the "Carry." When a Petty Officer is in command of a Firing party, he will have his cutlass drawn and carry out the movements laid down in sword exercises.

As the coffin is brought out of the building, feet first, the officers in command of the Firing party and Guard will order :—

Present—Arms. As in *Rifle Exercises*.
Officers as in *Sword Exercises*.

The Petty Officer of the Gun's Crew will order:—

Gun's Crew, } As in *Squad Drill*.
About—Turn.

Off—Caps. As in *Squad Drill*.

Officers or Petty Officers in command of other parties (not Band) will order **Off—Caps.**

When the coffin has been placed on the gun carriage, the officers of the Firing party and Guard will order :—

Reverse—Arms. As in *Funeral Exercises*.
Officers as in *Sword Exercises*.

Right (or Left)—Turn. As in *Squad Drill*. Bugler turning and then taking one pace forward and two paces right (or left).

Slow—March. Firing party will step off and pass between the mourners and band, and the Escort, thus leading the procession. The Guard will follow the Firing party.

Petty Officer of Gun's Crew will order **On—Caps, About—Turn.** The band will **Right In—cline** before being stepped off and will again *Incline* without further orders when in rear of the Guard. The gun-carriage will follow immediately in rear of the band, the bearers marching behind it in two ranks.

When the coffin has passed the mourners and Escort, the Officers or Petty Officers in charge of these parties will order **On—Caps** and they will follow on in rear of the procession, each party receiving the order **Right In—cline** before being stepped off and again *Inclining*, without orders, when in rear of the party ahead.

Note.—Some of the mourners may be in carriages.

The Officer in command of the Escort will follow in rear.

The band will play a dead march as previously ordered by the Officer in command of the Escort.

Note.—If the procession starts from a hospital, the band must not play until it is 300 yards clear of the hospital.

When the band ceases to play the Officer of the Firing party will order :—

Quick—March. As in *Funeral Exercises*.

The Guard, Band, Gun's Crew, &c., will be ordered **Quick—March** in succession by the Officers in charge.

The Officer of the Firing party, when at a convenient distance from the cemetery, will order :—

Slow—March. As in *Funeral Exercises*.

The band will again play a dead march and Officers of parties will order **Slow—March.**

When the head of the procession is a few paces from the cemetery gates, the Officers of the Firing party and Guard will order :—

Form—Lane. The ranks will incline outwards, take 3 paces, and then incline in the original

direction. The Bugler will conform to the movements of the front rank.

The band will conform to the movements of the Firing party, two ranks each side of the road. The Gun's Crew, mourners and Escort will lead on.

The Officers of the Firing party and Guard will order :—

Halt. As usual.

Inwards—Turn. As usual. The Officer will align himself with the rear rank, facing the Bugler.

Rest on your Arms—Reversed. } As in *Funeral Exercises*.

The Gun's Crew, mourners and Escort will proceed to the cemetery chapel, the bearers, mourners and Escort attending the service.

Notes.—(i) In certain cemeteries the gun carriage is not allowed to enter, in which case it is necessary for the bearers to carry the coffin from the cemetery gates.

(ii) If the service commences at the cemetery gates the mourners and Escort will be ordered **Off—Caps** by the Officers or Petty Officers in charge.

After the Escort has passed through the ranks of the Firing party, the Officers of the Firing party and Guard will order :—

Atten—tion. As in *Funeral Exercises*.

Reverse—Arms. As in *Funeral Exercises*.

Ranks, Right (or Left) In—cline. } Parties turn towards cemetery.

Slow—March. Step off as ordered and again incline towards the cemetery after taking 3 paces. Bugler and Officers resume their marching positions.

The Guard will be marched to a convenient position in the cemetery and halted.

Notes.—(i) Orders will be given to the band to remain outside the cemetery or to follow the Firing party to the grave as convenient.

(ii) If the coffin is carried direct to the grave, the Firing party and Guard will follow the Escort.

(iii) The coffin is placed on the right side of the grave.

When the Firing party arrives at the grave, they will be halted in a suitable position and turned towards the grave. The Officers of the Firing party and Guard will order :—

On the Right
(or Left), Close.
Quick—March. } As in *Funeral Exercises*.

Rest on your
Arms—Reversed. } As in *Funeral Exercises*.

On completion of the service the Officers or Petty Officers in charge of the mourners and Escort will order **On—Caps**.

The Officers of the Firing party and Guard will order :—

Atten—tion. As in *Funeral Exercises*.

Slope—Arms. As in *Funeral Exercises*.

The Officer of the Firing party only will order :—

Volleys with Blank
| Cartridges—Load. } As in *Ceremonial Firing*.

Present. As in *Ceremonial Firing*.

Fire. As in *Ceremonial Firing*.

After the volley the bugler will sound the *Commodore's Salute*. Immediately after the last sound of the bugle the Officer of the Firing party will order :—

Load. As in *Ceremonial Firing*.

A second and third volley will be fired, the bugler sounding the *Commodore's Salute*, after the second volley, and the *Last Post* after the third volley.

After the *Last Post*, the Officer of the Firing party will order :—

Unload. As in *Ceremonial Firing*.

Order—Arms. As in *Ceremonial Firing*.

Fix—Bayonets. As in *Rifle Exercises*.

Note.—The flank man will not take three paces forward.

The Guard will Fix Bayonets independently.

The Officers in command of the Firing party and Guard will then order :—

Slope—Arms. As in *Rifle Exercises*.

Present—Arms. As in *Rifle Exercises*.

Short pause.

Slope—Arms. As in *Rifle Exercises*.

Form—Fours. If space permits.

Right (or Left). As necessary for marching out of cemetery.

When the whole of the funeral parties are outside the cemetery, the Officer in command of the Escort will organise for marching, with the band leading, followed by the Firing party, Guard, mourners and Escort. Bayonets may be unfixed.

Note.—Orders are generally issued to the Gun's Crew to return as convenient.

The band will not commence to play until clear of the burial ground.

16. TABLE OF

Rank.	Minute Guns.	Escort.
		Officers and Men.
1.	2.	3.
Admiral of Fleet - -	In accordance with Articles 150 & 151, K.R. and A.I., for Flag Officers, Commodores, Captains, and Commanders-in-Command.	1,000
Admirals - - -		800
Other Flag Officers -		600
Captains in Command -		400
Other Captains and Comdrs. in Command.		300
Other Comdrs. and Lieut.-Comdrs.	Nil	200
Lieutenants - - -	"	100
Sub-Lieuts., Mates and Cd. Wt. Offrs.	"	50
Warrant and Subordinate Officers.	"	40
Ch. Petty Officers and Petty Officers.	"	30
All other ratings - -	"	20

Remarks.

(a) A salute of guns as laid down in Article 150, K.R. and A.I., is to be fired for all Flag Officers and Commodores in addition to the three volleys of musketry at the grave.

(b) All Officers and ratings are to have three volleys of musketry fired over the grave.

(c) The numbers shown in Col. 3 are subject to means at disposal of Senior Officer present. If the funeral is to take place away from a Naval Port or the anchorage where the ship or squadron is lying, he will take into consideration the circumstances of the case, the distance and the transport facilities (see also K.R. and A.I., Articles 1250 and 1251).

FUNERAL PARTIES.

Firing Party and Guard.			
In Command.	Firing Party.	Guard.	In Command.
4.	5.	6.	7.
Senior Captain.	50	100	Commander.
Captain	50	100	Commander.
Captain	50	100	Commander.
Comdr.	50	50	Commander.
Comdr.	25	25	Lieut.-Cdr. or Lieut.
Lt.-Cdr. or Lieut.	25	25	Lieut.-Cdr. or Lieut.
Lieut.	25	Nil	Lieut.
Lieut.	12	"	Officer of equal rank.
Lieut.	12	"	Officer of equal rank.
Lieut.	12	"	Ch. P.O. or Petty Offr.
Lieut.	12	"	" "

(d) The numbers shown in Cols. 5 and 6 should be adhered to on all occasions, unless the circumstances are such as to render this impracticable.

(e) This table does not include mourners, as to whom there is to be no restriction on numbers attending, subject to the remarks in (c) as to distance and transport.

(f) The same equipment is to be worn by the Guard and Firing Party, but blank ammunition is to be provided for the latter only. An Officer junior to the Officer in charge of the Firing Party should be in charge of the Guard.

PART VI.

PLATOON DRILL.

Object of Platoon Drill.

The object of platoon drill is to enable the platoon, when it takes its place in the company, to carry out both by day and night any movement or formation the Company Commander may direct, whether laid down in this handbook or improvised to meet the circumstances of the moment.

1. GENERAL RULES.

Organisation of a Platoon.—The platoon will consist of 12 files, and will be divided into four sections, each under a section leader. Sections will be numbered from one to four. The whole will be under the command of a Platoon Commander, assisted by a Platoon Petty Officer.

The platoon may be formed as follows :—

- In line (as in squad drill).
- In column of fours, or file.
- In line of sections in file.
- In column of route.

The Platoon Commander and Platoon Petty Officer when the platoon is acting alone or at a distance from other platoons, will place themselves where they can best exercise supervision.

When the platoon is not acting alone, the Platoon Commander and Platoon Petty Officer will take up the positions shewn in the various diagrams. Section leaders will at all times, after the platoon has been proved, take up the positions shown in the diagrams.

Guides.—See Table of Guides in Part XIII.

Officer or Section Leader.	POSITION OF PLATOON OFFICERS AND SECTION LEADERS.			
	1. Line.	2. Column of Fours.	3. Line of Sections.	4. Column of Route.
Platoon Commander.	Two paces in front of centre.	Two paces on front rank side of centre.	Leading the platoon.	In line with No. 1 section leader.
Platoon Petty Officer.	Opposite Platoon Commander.	Opposite Platoon Commander.	Opposite Platoon Commander.	In line with Nos. 2 and 3 section leaders.
No. 1. Section Leader.	Right flank of Front rank of No. 1 Section.	Retain the same position as for Line.	Two paces in front of centre of leading File of own Section.	As for column of fours.
No. 2. Section Leader.	Left flank of Front rank of No. 2 Section.			In line with No. 3 section leader.
No. 3. Section Leader.	Right flank of Front rank of No. 3 Section.			As for column of fours.
No. 4. Section Leader.	Left flank of Front rank of No. 4 Section.			As for column of fours, except with a company.

Changes of formation can usually be carried out :—

(i) From the halt, halting on completion of the movement.

(ii) On the move, halting on completion of the movement.

(iii) From the halt, moving forward on completion of the movement.

(iv) On the move, moving forward on completion of the movement.

When movements are to be performed as in (i) and (ii), the command will be preceded by the caution **At the Halt**, unless the section of formation stands fast. As soon as movements as in (iii) and (iv) are completed, the command **For—ward** will be given.

The Platoon Commander gives the executive command when the whole platoon, or the whole platoon except the section of formation, is required to act; when sections act independently they receive the executive commands from their own leaders.

Sections will not be renumbered when a change of formation alters their relative position.

Supernumeraries will conform to all orders given to the platoon as to the carrying of their arms, except at the firing exercises when they remain at the *Order*.

When an officer requires to pass through the ranks, the two files immediately opposite to him will make way on the command **Make Way** by taking a pace away from him (as in forming fours) and a side pace outwards, so as to cover the files on their flanks. They will resume their position as soon as the officer has passed through. If ranks are changed on the march, section leaders will make way by checking the pace slightly and inclining outwards.

When *Forming* or *Forming Platoon* the section leaders are to be considered as the *right* (or *left*) hand man of the front rank.

For Directing flank, see Part XIII.

2. PROVING A PLATOON.

The platoon will fall in in line, outer section leaders taking post, inner section leaders being 2 paces in rear of the centre of the platoon, Platoon Petty Officer 4 paces in rear of the centre of the platoon, and be proved as follows :—

Number.—The men having numbered, Nos....., **Left of—Sections.**

Note.—As their numbers are called these men will raise the left forearm horizontally, hand extended. They will resume the position of attention together on the word *Sections*.

Outer Sections, Section leaders and supernumeraries
Slope—Arms. remain steady.

Inner Sections, Section leaders and supernumeraries
Slope—Arms. remain steady.

Nos. 7 to 12, Four Paces Left Close—March.

Section Leaders Nos. 2 and 3 section leaders, arms at
—Take Post. the short trail, align themselves with the front rank on the inner flank of their sections. Platoon Petty Officer takes 2 paces forward.

Tell off by Section leaders call the numbers of their
—Sections. sections in succession from the right, *e.g.*,
No. 1 section, No. 2 section, &c.

Note.—Sections are numbered from 1 to 16 throughout a Company, and sections must be called by these numbers when proving a Platoon.

Numbers 1 and 2
Sections will be
Right Half Platoon;
Numbers 3 and 4
Sections will be
Left Half Platoon. } As ordered.

By Half Platoons—
 Number.
 Form—Fours.
 Form—Two-Deep.
 About—Turn.
 Form—Fours.
 Form—Two-Deep.
 About—Turn.
 Order—Arms.

As ordered.

From now onwards section leaders will conform to the movements of the Platoon.

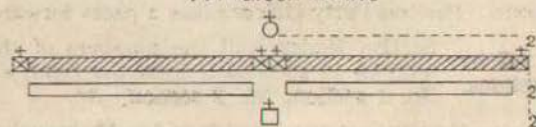
Platoon Commander will order :—

By the Right
 —Dress.

Men act as taught in Squad drill. Platoon Commander dresses front rank. Platoon P.O. comes to the *Slope* and doubles out to the right flank, where he paces off the distance between the ranks. He then marches out to a convenient position on the flank and dresses the rear rank. When Platoon Commander is satisfied with the dressing, he and the Platoon P.O. take post at the double. Platoon P.O. comes to the *Order*.

POSITION OF COMMANDERS ETC. IN A PLATOON.

A Platoon in Line



Key.

⊕ Platoon Comdr.

⊞ Platoon P.O.

⊠ Section Leader

When the platoon has been proved and dressed, the Platoon Commander will order **Slope—Arms** and report the platoon to the Company 2nd in Command, **No. — Platoon. Proved and correct.—File.**

Note.—Arms may be inspected if desired after the platoon is proved.

3. CHANGING RANKS.

Platoon Commander will order :—

About—Turn. The whole will turn about except the Platoon Petty Officer and supernumeraries. Outer section leaders will take two paces forward and align themselves with the new front rank. Inner section leaders will take a pace forward, and a pace outwards to allow Platoon Commander and Platoon Petty Officer to change positions. When these have passed through the ranks, the inner section leaders will take a pace towards each other and a pace forward, aligning themselves with the new front ranks. Supernumeraries will pass through the ranks as taught in Sect. 1. The new right section leader will direct.

Note.—If it is desired to turn about without changing ranks in order to retire for a short distance with a view to turning again in the original direction, the command will be **Platoon will Retire, About—Turn.** The platoon officers and supernumeraries retain their positions and the same section leader will direct. To turn in the original direction the command will be **Platoon will Advance, About—Turn.**

4. FORMATION OF FOURS.

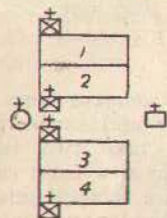
Platoon Commander will order :—

Form—Fours. Men will form fours according to their numbers in sections.

Right (or Left). As taught in Squad Drill; section leaders retain their positions, sections of fours march by the front-rank side unless the order

"By the Right (or Left)" is given, when all section leaders move over to the directing flank.

PLATOON IN COLUMN OF FOURS



⊕ Section Leader

□ Platoon P.O.

○ Platoon Commander

Note:—Supernumeraries will align themselves with the Section Leader of the Section for which they are detailed

5. MARCHING IN LINE.

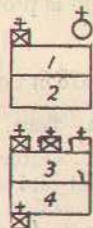
By the Right (or Left), Quick—March. The right or left section leader will select points to march on. The whole will step off marching by the named flank.

6. A PLATOON IN LINE FORMING TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT).

Platoon Commander will order:—

Right (or Left) —Form. } As in squad drill.

PLATOON IN COLUMN OF ROUTE



7. A PLATOON IN LINE FORMING A LINE OF SECTIONS MOVING IN THE SAME DIRECTION.

Platoon Commander will order:—

Into File,
Right
(or Left)—
Turn.
Sections,
Left (or Right)
—Wheel.
Quick—
March.

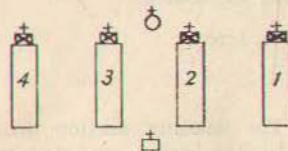
} As ordered.

8. A LINE OF SECTIONS FORMING PLATOON MOVING TO A FLANK IN FILE, ON THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) SECTION.

Platoon Commander will order:—

Right (or Left) Section to the Front; Remainder, Right (or Left) —Wheel. The named section will continue to move forward. The others will wheel to the right (or left) and, on reaching the ground over which the leading section has moved, they will wheel successively to the left (or right) and follow each other in file.

PLATOON IN LINE OF SECTIONS



⊕ Section Leaders

□ Platoon P.O.

○ Platoon Commander

9. A PLATOON MOVING TO A FLANK IN FOURS, FORMING UP INTO PLATOON.

Platoon Commander will order :—

On the Right (or **Left**), **Form** **Platoon.** **For—ward.** As described in *Squad Drill*. Should a platoon marching to the right in fours be ordered to *Form Platoon on the Right*, or *vice versa*, thereby changing ranks, the officers and section leaders will at once gain their new positions.

10. A PLATOON MOVING IN COLUMN OF FOURS, FORMING A LINE OF SECTIONS MOVING IN THE SAME DIRECTION.

Platoon Commander will order :—

(i) *On the March.*

Form—
Two-Deep. } As ordered.

On the Left,
Form line of
Sections
at—Paces
Interval;
Remainder,
Double—
March. The leading section will continue to lead on in *quick time*, the remainder will *double* as ordered, being led by their section leaders, and on arriving at the required interval will receive from their leaders the order **Quick—March**, the leaders taking post two paces in front of the centre of their leading file. A flank of direction will be named.

(ii) *As a Halting Movement.*

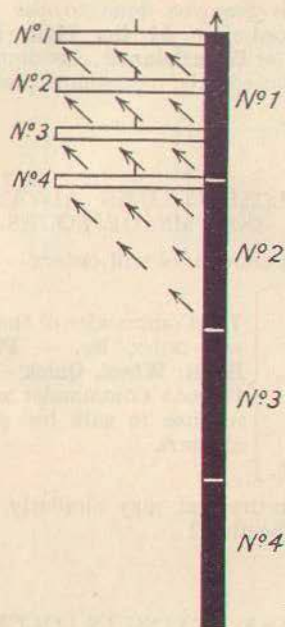
Form—
Two-Deep. } As ordered.

At the Halt,
on the Left,
Form Line of
Sections at—
Paces Interval;
Remainder,
Left In—cline. } The leading section will be halted by its leader, and the remainder on arriving at the required interval will be ordered by their section leaders,
Double—
March. **No—Section Right In—cline,** and when in the alignment, **No—Section—Halt.**

Notes.—(i) Movement (ii) is carried out at the Double, as it is a field movement.

(ii) To form line from line of sections, the command will be, **On the Left, Form—Sections—**men will act as in squad drill.

(iii) When a line of sections is on the march, the interval may be increased or reduced on the command, **From (or on) No.—, Open (or Close) to — Paces interval; Remainder, Double—March.**



24. A CLOSE COLUMN FORMING COLUMN OF FOURS MOVING TO A FLANK.

Company Commander will order :—

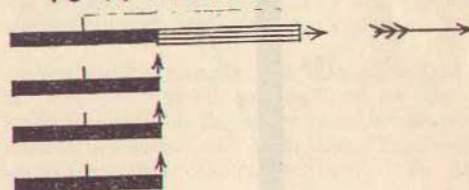
Move to the Right (or Left) in Column of Fours, Form—Fours. Right.

The whole will act as ordered. The Platoon Commander of the leading platoon will order, **No. — Platoon, Quick—March.** The remaining Platoon Commanders will, in succession, order, **Left (or Right) Wheel, Quick—March,** and later, **Right (or Left)—Wheel** in time to take up their position in column of fours.

Notes.—(i) A company can be marched off from any platoon by the addition to the word of command of **No. — Platoon Leading.**

(ii) In order to restore the original order of the company, it may be marched off as follows : **Advance (or Retire), etc., in Column of Fours in the Following Order, No. 1, No. 2, No. 3, No. 4 Platoons.**

A CLOSE COLUMN FORMING COLUMN OF FOURS MOVING TO A FLANK.



25. A COMPANY MOVING IN COLUMN OF FOURS, FORMING CLOSE COLUMN AT THE HALT FACING RIGHT (OR LEFT).

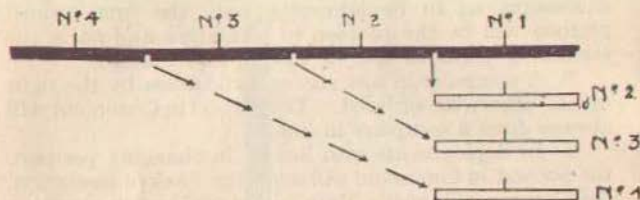
Company Commander will order :—

At the Halt, Facing Left, Form Close Column (or Column).

The Commander of the leading platoon will halt his unit and turn it to the left by ordering, **No.—Platoon—Halt. Left—Turn,** and then **By the Right—Dress.** The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their positions in column (or close column) where they will receive the command, **No.—Platoon—Halt. Left—Turn. By the Right—Dress.** On the word **Halt** the right guides will at once turn to their left and take up their covering and distance from the right guide of the platoon in front.

platoons will move into their positions, left arm to left arm.

(ii) The movement may similarly be carried out to the Halt from line advancing.



28. A CLOSE COLUMN FORMING LINE FACING THE SAME DIRECTION, FROM THE HALT TO THE HALT.

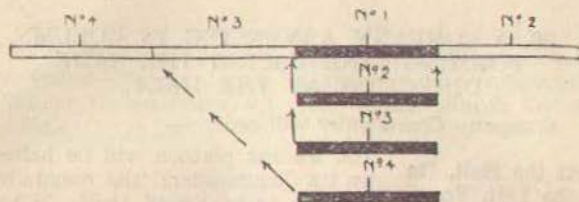
Company Commander will order:—

On the Left, Form
—Line;
Remainder, Form
—Fours. Left.
Quick—March.

The leading platoon will stand fast. The remainder will be led, by their guides, by the shortest route to a point four paces in rear of where their inner flank will rest. Each platoon will then wheel parallel to the alignment, and when opposite to its place in line will receive from its Commander, No. — **Platoon—Halt.**
Right—Turn. By the Right—Dress.

Note.—This movement may also be carried out outwards, on the order **Line Outwards, Two (or One) Platoons to the Right; Remainder, Form—Fours, Outwards.** The platoons or platoon next in succession from the front will move to the right, the remaining platoon (or platoons) moving to the left.

See Section 26, para. 4.



29. A LINE ADVANCING IN COLUMN.

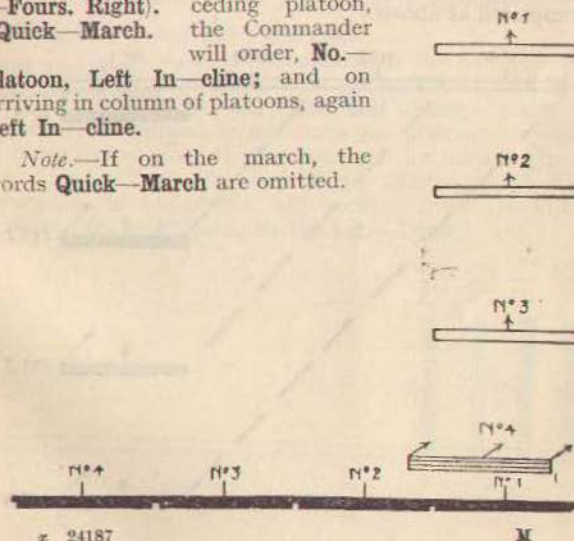
Company Commander will order:—

Advance in
Column from
the Right;
Remainder, Right
—Turn (or Form
—Fours. Right).
Quick—March.

The right platoon will advance. The remainder will act as in *Squad Drill*, mark time two paces, and then lead on. When the guide of each platoon is in rear of the centre of the preceding platoon, the Commander will order, No.—

Platoon, Left In—cline; and on arriving in column of platoons, again **Left In—cline.**

Note.—If on the march, the words **Quick—March** are omitted.



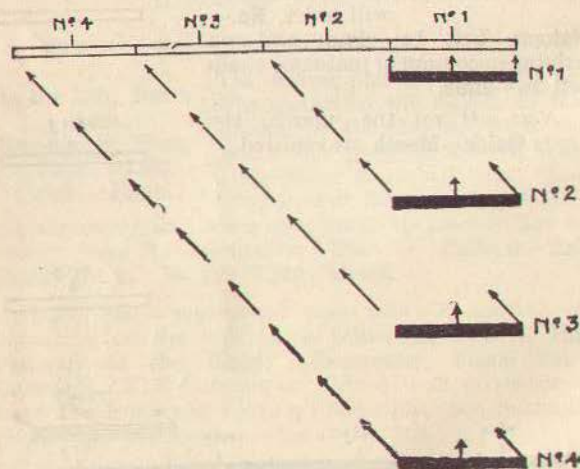
30. A COMPANY ADVANCING IN COLUMN, FORMING LINE FACING THE SAME DIRECTION AT THE HALT.

Company Commander will order :—

At the Halt, On the Left, Form Line; Remainder, Left In—cline.

The leading platoon will be halted by its Commander; the remainder will act as in *Squad Drill*. When each platoon is immediately in rear of its position in line, it will receive from its Commander, **No — Platoon, Right In—cline, and when on the alignment, Halt. By the Right—Dress.**

Notes.—(i) This movement can also be done from the *Halt* to the *Halt*. The Company Commander will order, **On the Left, Form Line; Remainder, Left In—cline. Quick—March;** the movement being completed as above.



(ii) If it is intended to continue advancing, the Company Commander will give, **Double—March** instead of **Quick—March;** and on reaching the alignment, Platoon Commanders will give **Quick—March** instead of **Halt.**

31. A LINE FORMING COLUMN FACING THE SAME DIRECTION.

As for forming close column.

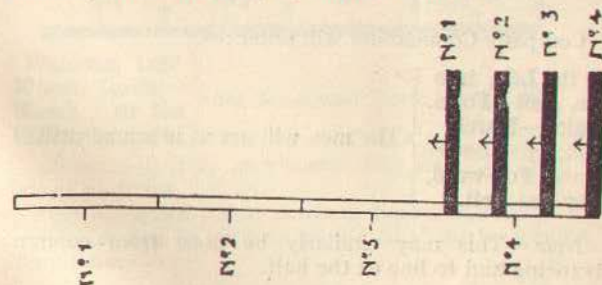
32. A COLUMN FORMING LINE FACING THE SAME DIRECTION.

As in Section 30.

33. A CLOSE COLUMN ON THE MARCH FORMING LINE FACING A FLANK.

Company Commander will order :—

At the Halt, The Commander of the rear platoon will at once order, **No. — Platoon, Line to the Left.** **At the Halt, Left—Form.** Each of the other Commanders will form his platoon into line in like manner when it arrives at column distance from the platoon next in rear. Each platoon, after the formation is completed, will receive from its Commander, **No. — Platoon, By the Left—Dress.**

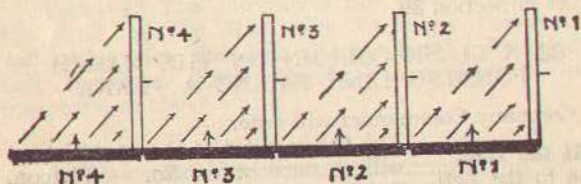


34. A LINE FORMING COLUMN FACING A FLANK.

Company Commander will order :—

At the Halt, into
Column, Platoons,
Right—Form.
Quick—March. } The men will act as in squad drill.

Note.—This may be similarly done from line advancing and to column advancing.

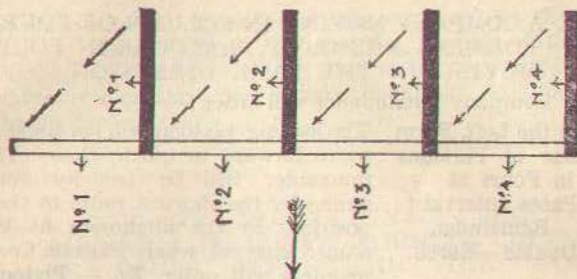


35. A COLUMN FORMING LINE FACING A FLANK AND MOVING FORWARD.

Company Commander will order :—

By the Left, into
Line, Left—Form.
Quick—March.
(And, when line is
formed) For-ward,
by the Left. } The men will act as in squad drill.

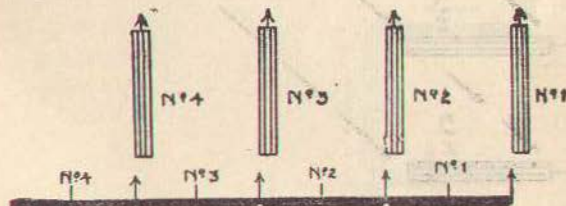
Note.—This may similarly be done from column advancing and to line at the halt.



36. A LINE ADVANCING IN FOURS FROM THE RIGHT OF PLATOONS.

Company Commander will order :—

Advance in Fours,
from the Right of
Platoons, Form—
Fours. Right. } The movement will be made as directed.



Platoons, Left
Wheel, Quick—
March. By the
Right (or Left). } See detail and Note, Section 12.

Notes.—(i) This movement may be done from the left of platoons.

(ii) A company may retire in similar manner.

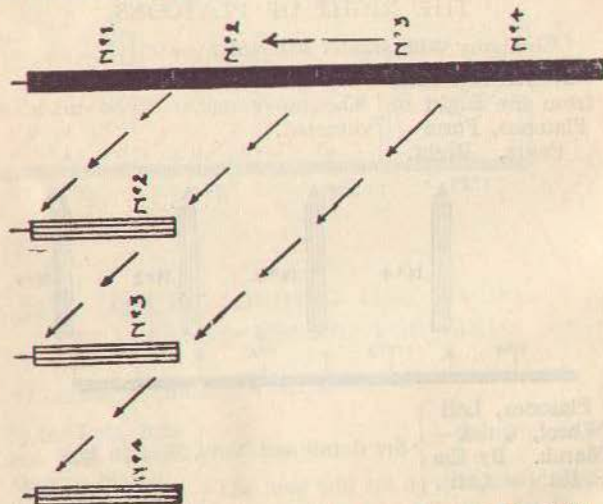
(iii) A line of sections in file can also be formed in like manner.

37. A COMPANY MOVING IN COLUMN OF FOURS, FORMING A LINE OF PLATOONS IN FOURS MOVING IN THE SAME DIRECTION.

Company Commander will order :—

On the Left, Form Line of Platoons in Fours at — Paces Interval ; Remainder, Double—March.

The leading platoon will continue to move forward in quick time. The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their positions in the alignment at the named interval, where Platoon Commanders will order, **No. — Platoon, Quick—March**, taking post two paces in front of the centre of the leading four of their platoons.



- Notes.—(i) This may be similarly done at the halt.
 (ii) A line of sections in file can be formed in the same manner, section leaders taking post two paces in front of the centre of their leading file.
 (iii) When a line of platoons in fours (or file) is on the march, the interval may be increased or diminished

on the command, **From (or on) No. —, Open (or Close) To — Paces Interval ; Remainder, Double—March**, Platoon Commanders giving the order to incline or wheel as necessary, then **Quick—March** on arriving at the required interval.

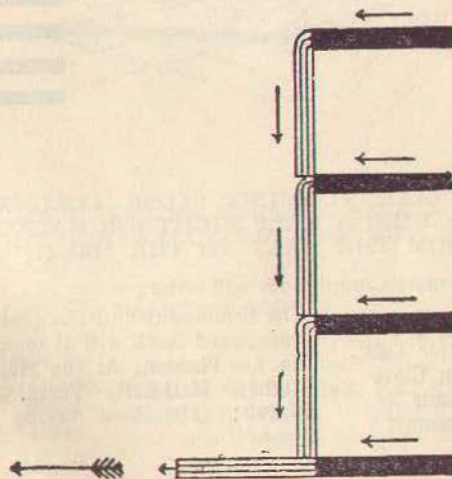
(iv) Platoon Commanders lead their platoons, because this is a field movement.

38. A COMPANY MOVING IN A LINE OF PLATOONS IN FOURS, FORMING COLUMN OF FOURS MOVING IN THE SAME DIRECTION.

Company Commander will order :—

Left (or Right) Platoon to the Front ; Remainder, Left (or Right) —Wheel.

The named platoon will continue to lead on, the remainder will act as ordered, forming column of fours, Platoon Commanders taking up their positions during the movement, and ordering **Right (or Left) wheel** to follow in Column of fours.



39. A COMPANY MOVING IN A LINE OF PLATOONS IN FOURS, FORMING LINE FACING A FLANK.

Company Commander will order :—

At the Halt, Facing Right (or Left), Form—Line.

The Commander of the platoon on the right (or left) will order, **No. — Platoon—Halt. Right (or Left)—Turn. By the Right (or Left)—Dress.** The remainder will be led, by their guides, by the shortest route to a point four paces in rear of where their inner flank will rest. Each platoon will then wheel parallel to the alignment, and when opposite to its place in line it will receive from its Commander, **No.—Platoon—Halt. Right (or Left)—Turn. By the Right (or Left)—Dress.**



40. A LINE FORMING CLOSE COLUMN (OR COLUMN) A HALF RIGHT (OR HALF LEFT), FROM THE HALT TO THE HALT.

Company Commander will order :—

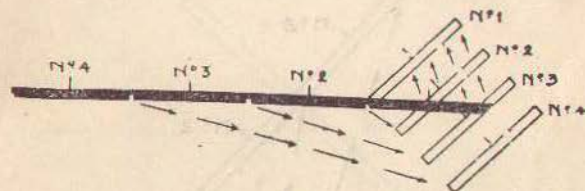
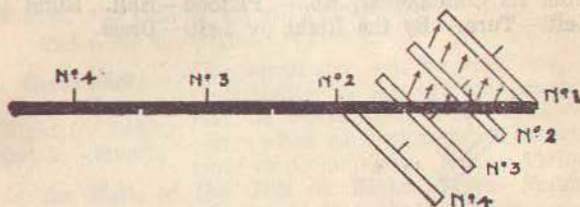
Half Right on the Right (or Left), Form Close Column (or Column);

The Commander of the platoon on the named flank will at once order, **No. — Platoon, At the Halt, Half Right (or Half Left)—Form. Quick—March;** the men acting as in *Squad Drill*.

And when the platoon is formed :—

Remainder, Form—Fours. Right (or Left). Quick—March. Left (or Right)—Turn. By the Right (or Left)—Dress.

The remainder will be led, by their guides, by the shortest route to their positions in column (or close column), where they will receive from their Commanders, **No. — Platoon—Halt.**



41. A CLOSE COLUMN FORMING LINE A HALF RIGHT (OR HALF LEFT) ON THE RIGHT (OR LEFT).

Company Commander will order :—

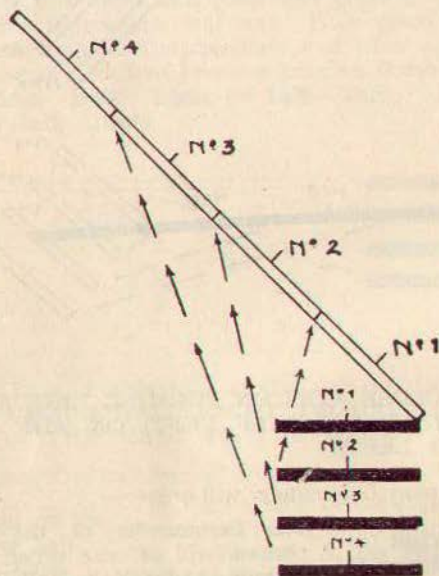
Half Right (or Half Left), on the Left (or Right), Form—Line;

The Commander of the leading platoon will at once order, **No. — Platoon, At the Halt, Half Right (or Half Left)—Form. Quick—March;** the men acting as in *Squad Drill*.

And when the platoon is formed :—

Remainder,
Form—Fours.
Left (or Right).
Quick—March.

The remainder will be then led, by their guides, by the shortest route to a point four paces in rear of where their inner flank will rest. Each platoon will then wheel parallel to the alignment, and when opposite to its place in line will receive from its Commander, **No. — Platoon—Halt. Right (or Left)—Turn. By the Right (or Left)—Dress.**



42. A LINE CHANGING POSITION A QUARTER, HALF OR FULL RIGHT (OR LEFT).

Company Commander will order :—

Change Position
Half Right
(or Half Left) ;
March ;

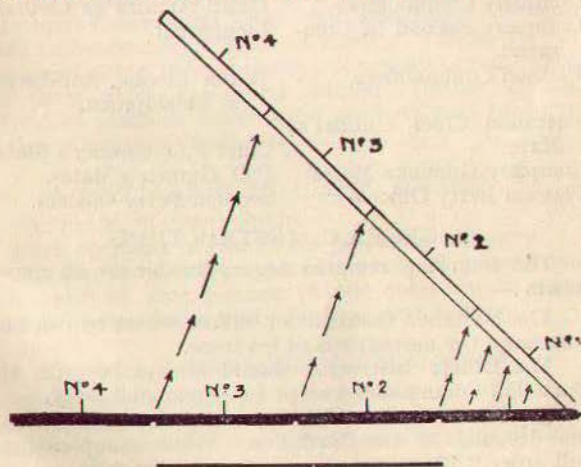
The Commander of the platoon on the named flank will at once order, **No. — Platoon, At the Halt, Half Right (or Half Left)—Form, Quick—**

March ; the men acting as in *Squad Drill*.

And when the platoon is formed :—

Remainder,
Form—Fours.
Right (or Left).
Quick—March.

The remainder will be then led, by their guides, to a point four paces in rear of where their inner flank will rest ; when each platoon will receive, from its Commander, **No. — Platoon, At the Halt, on the Left (or Right), Form—Platoon ;** and when formed, **By the Right (or Left)—Dress.**



PART VIII.

BATTALION DRILL.

1. The following is a table of officers, etc., of suitable rank or rating for the various duties in a Battalion:—

Battalion Commander	- Junior Captain, R.N., or Commander.
Battalion Second in Command.	Commander or Lieut.-Comdr.
Officer Instructor	- Lieut.-Comdr. "G" or Lieut. "G".
Battalion Warrant Officer	Comd. Gunner or Senior Gunner.
Company Commanders	- Lieut.-Comdrs. or Lieuts.
Company Second in Command.	Lieutenant.
Platoon Commanders	- Junior Lieuts., Sub-Lieuts. or Midshipmen.
Battalion Chief Gunner's Mate	- Chief P.O. Gunner's Mate.
Company Gunner's Mates	P.O. Gunner's Mates.
Platoon Petty Officers	- Seamen Petty Officers.

2. GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS.

The following remarks are applicable to all movements:—

The Battalion Commander will be where he can best command the movements of his force.

The Officer Instructor should always be with the Battalion Commander except for ceremonial work.

The Battalion Second in Command always supervises the dressing of the Battalion. When completed he will order "Battalion—Steady" and take post.

All movements concerning column of fours can be similarly done in column of route.

When at the halt or on the march, should the Battalion Commander give the caution that the formation is to be changed or give the executive order for the new formation, the Battalion Second in Command, Battalion Chief G.M. and Company G.M.s will at once move to the positions from which they will direct the change of formation.

Battalion Commander should always give a caution before giving an order so that officers and petty officers concerned will have time to gain their new positions before the executive order is given.

In addition to the Movements laid down in this chapter (which are only suitable for Battalion Drill), the Battalion may, where applicable, be manoeuvred in other formations similar to those carried out by a company as laid down in Part VII (Company Drill).

When forming Mass from any formation, dressing will not be carried out unless and until ordered by the Battalion Commander. On the completion of any other movements which necessitate companies or platoons halting independently, Company Commanders will dress their companies without further orders. Individual platoons never dress until ordered to do so by their Company Commander.

3. BATTALION IN CLOSE COLUMN.

Companies in close column.

Each company in rear of the preceding company.

Distance between companies to be 12 paces from front rank of rear platoon of one company to front rank of leading platoon of company next in rear.

Position of Officers in Battalion close column.

Battalion Commander	- As requisite.
Officer Instructor	- With Battalion Commander.
Battalion Second in Command.	Two paces on right flank of leading platoon.
Battalion Warrant Officer	- Two paces on left flank of leading platoon.

Battalion Chief Gunner's Mate. Two paces on right flank of third platoon from front.

Company and Platoon As for Company Drill. Officers.

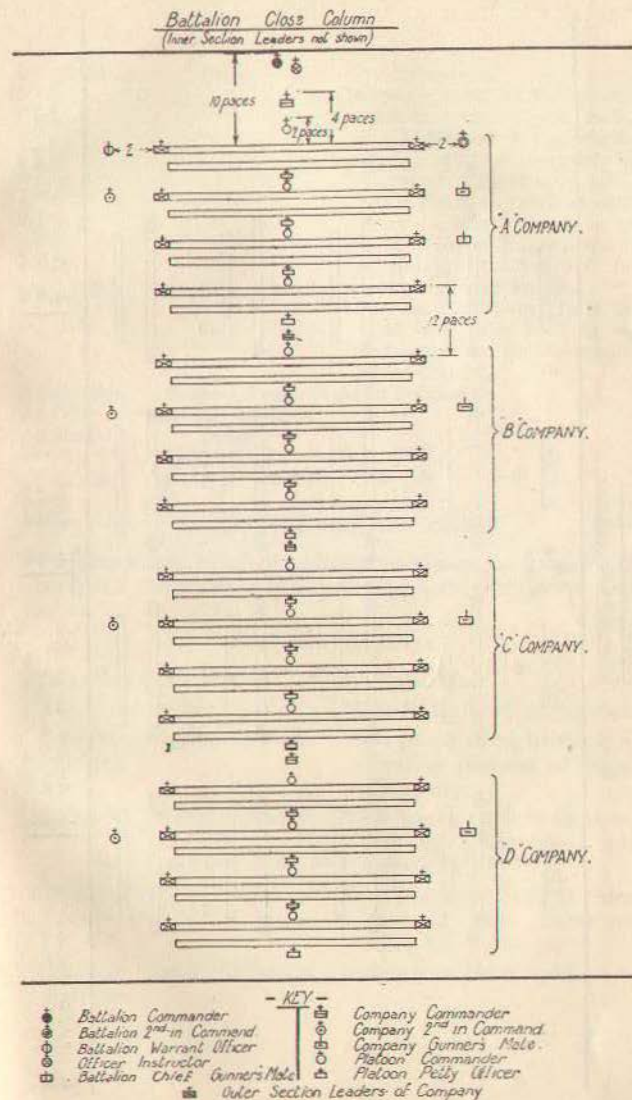
4. DRESSING A BATTALION IN BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN.

Order by. *Order.* *Procedure.*
Battalion Commander. **Battalion, by the Right—Dress.** Battalion Second in Command covers all right guides from the right guide of leading platoon as taught in Drill for Markers.

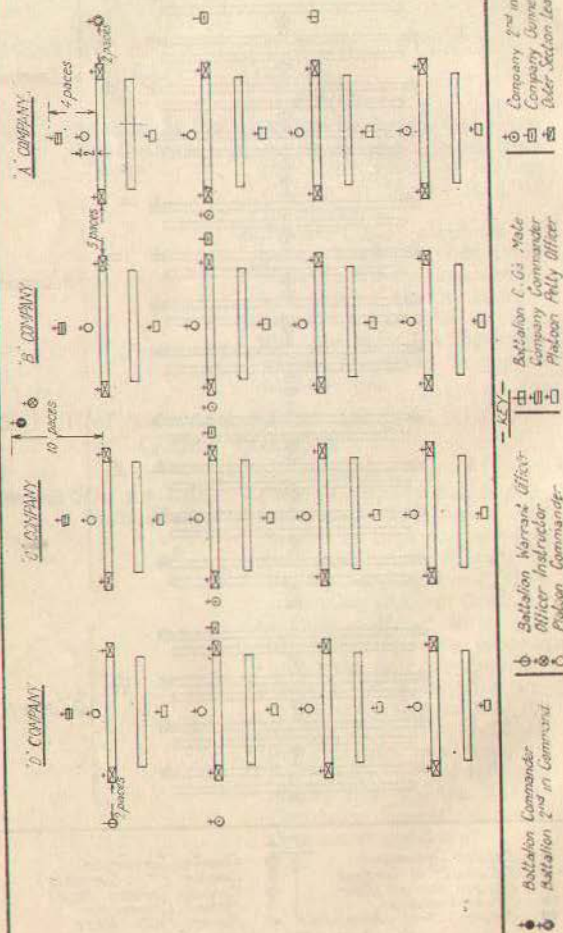
Battalion C.G.M. steps off the paces between companies. Each Company Commander will order "By the right—dress" as soon as he sees that the right leading guide of his Company is placed and covered.

5. FORMING MASS FROM BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN.

Order by. *Order.* *Procedure.*
Battalion Commander. **On the Left, Form Mass.** Leading Company stands fast, remaining companies are moved by their commanders into position by moving to the left in fours and then advancing in Close Column. Company G.M. of three rear companies at once proceed on to the new alignment. Battalion C.G.M. at once proceeds to the left flank of the leading Platoon of the leading company and steps off four paces to its left and marks the position of the Company Gunner's Mate of the second company.



Battalion in Mass.
(Inner Section leaders not shown)



Order by. Order.

Procedure.

Company G.M. of the second company takes post facing B.C.G.M. and is covered by the Battalion Second in Command; when covered he turns right, and second company is marched on to its G.M. The B.C.G.M. acts in a similar manner for the remaining companies.

When each company Halts, its G.M. will take Post in the company as for Company Close Column.

As in Section 7.

Battalion
Com-
mander.

**Order—Arms.
By the Right—
Dress.**
(If desired).

6. BATTALION IN MASS.

Companies in close column on the same alignment. Intervals between flanks of adjacent companies five paces.

Positions of Officers.

Battalion Commander	-	As requisite.
Officer Instructor	-	With Battalion Commander.
Battalion Second in Com- mand.	-	Two paces on right flank of leading platoon of right company.
Battalion Warrant Officer	-	Two paces on left flank of leading platoon of left company.
Battalion C.G.M.	-	Two paces on right of third platoon from front of right hand company.
Company and Officers.	Platoon	As for Company Drill.

7. DRESSING IN MASS.

Order by.
Battalion
Com-
mander.

Order.
**Battalion,
Order—Arms.**

Battalion
Com-
mander.

**By the Right—
Dress.**

Procedure.

This is only necessary if the men are not with Arms at the Order. The Battalion will act as ordered.

At the order "Dress" right guides of all Platoons, and the left guides of the Platoons of the left flank Company will "Slope Arms," take one pace forward and, with the exception of the guides of the right flank Company, will turn right.

Battalion W.O. will mark the left flank of the Battalion and will be covered by the Battalion Second in Command. The Battalion Second in Command will then cover the right guides of all leading platoons, from the right, aligning them between the extreme right guide and the Battalion W.O.

When the leading guides are covered, the Battalion Second in Command will move to the head of formation and cover the right guides of the right company.

Battalion C.G.M. will step off seven paces between the right guides of the right flank Company and the Battalion W.O. will step off seven paces between the left guides of the left flank Company.

Order by. *Order.*

Procedure.

The Platoon Commanders of the right flank company will cover the remaining guides from the right, aligning them between the extreme flank guides.

Battalion
Second
in Com-
mand.

**Guides—
Steady.**

All guides, except the guides of the right flank Company, will turn left. Company Commanders will dress their companies in succession from the right as soon as their leading right guides are placed by the Battalion C.G.M., who will step off five paces between the Companies in succession from the right as soon as the leading platoon of each Company obtains its approximate dressing.

Note.—Company G.M.s will not step off paces between the guides of their respective companies.

On completion of the dressing the Company Seconds in Command will order the guides of their Companies to "Order Arms" before giving the order "Steady." Company Commanders will then stand their companies at Ease and Take Post.

As ordered.

Battalion
Second
in Com-
mand.

**Battalion—
Atten—tion.**

Battalion
Second
in Com-
mand.

**Battalion—
Steady.**

As ordered.

8. ADVANCING OR RETIRING IN MASS.

<i>Order by.</i>	<i>Order.</i>	<i>Procedure.</i>
Battalion Commander.	Battalion will Advance, Quick—March.	The men will move as in squad drill. The right will direct unless otherwise ordered.

Note.—The Battalion Commander can order either flank of any company to direct the march.

Company Second in Command and Company G.M.s act as taught in Company Drill.

9. FORMING BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN FROM MASS.

Battalion Commander.	On the Right, Form Battalion Close Column.	Right hand company stands fast. The remainder are moved into position by their commanders, by retiring in close column and then moving to the left in fours. Battalion Second in Command covers all right guides as they come into position. Company G.M.s of moving companies at once proceed on to the directing flank reply to take post. Battalion C.G.M. steps off the paces between companies and places Company Gunner's Mates. Companies march on to their G.M.s. As each company halts the right guides turn left and are covered. As soon as Company Commanders see their guides placed they will order, "By the right—dress."
----------------------	---	--

10. ADVANCING OR RETIRING IN BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN.

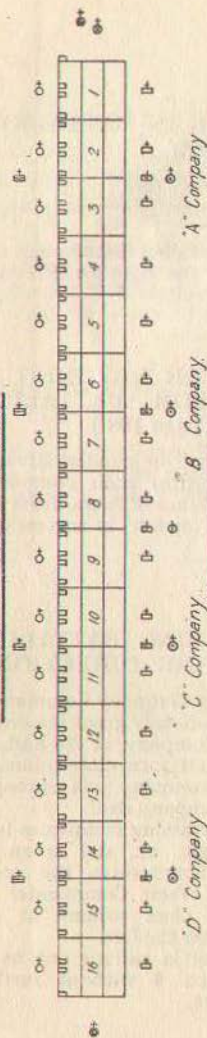
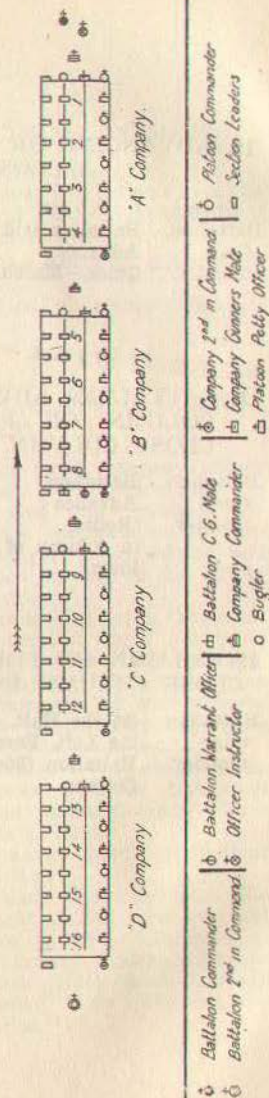
<i>Order by.</i>	<i>Order.</i>	<i>Procedure.</i>
Battalion Commander.	Battalion will Advance, Quick—March.	The men will move as in squad drill. The Battalion Commander can order the right or left flank to direct.

11. BATTALION ADVANCING OR RETIRING IN COLUMN OF FOURS FROM BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN. (*See also* page 198.)

Battalion Commander.	Battalion, Advance (Retire) in column of fours.	Company commanders advance (or retire) their companies in column of fours, from the right (or left) in succession.
----------------------	--	--

12. COLUMN OF FOURS FORMING BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN IN THE SAME DIRECTION.

Battalion Commander.	At the Halt, on the Left, Form Battalion Close Column.	Leading Company Commander immediately gives the order, "—Company, at the halt, on the left, form close column." The company acts as taught in company drill. The remaining companies lead straight on, and when in position receive the order from their Commander to form close column at the halt on the left. Dressing is carried out as in Section 4 without further orders.
----------------------	---	--

Battalion in Column of FoursBattalion in Column of Route**13. COLUMN OF FOURS FORMING MASS IN THE SAME DIRECTION.**

Order by.
Battalion Com-
mander.

Order.
**At the Halt,
on the left,
Form Mass.**

Procedure.

Leading Company Commander orders "—Company, at the halt, on the left, form Close Column."

The company acts as taught in company drill. The remaining Company Commanders disengage their companies to the left and act in a similar manner so as to form mass. They must be wheeled in Column of Fours so that Platoons as a whole are at 90 degrees to the alignment when the order to form platoon at the halt on the left is given by the Platoon Commander.

G.M.s are placed for the companies to march on as taught in Section 5.

As ordered.

Battalion Com-
mander.
Battalion Com-
mander.

**Battalion,
Order—Arms.**
**By the right—
Dress.**
(If desired).

As in Section 7.

14. BATTALION ADVANCING OR RETIRING IN COLUMN OF FOURS FROM MASS.

Battalion Com-
mander.

**Battalion,
Advance
(retire) in
column of fours
from the right
(or left) (or—
company leading).**

The named Company Commander advances or retires his company in column of fours, the remainder moving their companies to the right or left.

15. COLUMN OF FOURS FORMING MASS FACING A FLANK.

<i>Order by.</i>	<i>Order.</i>	<i>Procedure.</i>
Battalion Com- mander.	At the Halt, Facing left, Form Mass.	Leading Company Commander orders "—Company, at the halt, facing left, form Close Column." The company acts as taught in company drill. The remaining companies lead straight on and when in position receive the order from their Commanders to form close column, at the halt, facing left.
Battalion Com- mander.	Battalion, Order—Arms.	As ordered.
Battalion Com- mander.	By the right— Dress. (If desired).	As in Section 7.

16. COLUMN OF FOURS FORMING BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN FACING A FLANK.

Battalion Com- mander.	At the Halt, Facing left, Form Battalion Close Column.	Leading Company Commander immediately gives the order "—Company, at the halt, facing left, form close column." The company acts as taught in company drill. The remaining Company Commanders disengage their companies to the right and when in position to form Battalion close column, order "—Company, at the halt, facing left, form close column." Leading guides of platoons must be careful to pass to
------------------------------	---	--

Order by. *Order.*

Procedure.

the left of, or exactly over, the point where the left flank of their platoon will rest when in position, otherwise when the platoon turns into line the left flank will be in advance of the right. Dressing is carried out as in Section 4 without further orders.

17. BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN FORMING MASS TO A FLANK.

Battalion Com- mander.	Facing left, Form Mass.	Company Commanders will wheel their companies through quarter of a circle to the left, and close to the right in fours to their position in mass.
Battalion Com- mander.	Battalion, Order— Arms. By the Right—Dress. (If desired).	As in Section 7.

18. BATTALION IN MASS AT THE HALT FORMING BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN AT THE HALT FACING A FLANK.

Battalion Com- mander.	Facing right, Form Battalion Close Column ; Remainder, Form—fours. Left. Quick—March.	Commander of the right company at once wheels his company through a quarter of a circle to the right. Company Commanders of the remainder will order their companies to mark time and to turn right after moving the necessary distance to the left.
------------------------------	--	--

Order by. Order.

Procedure.

On turning into Close Column, the right will be ordered to direct and Company Commanders will then wheel their companies through a quarter of a circle to the right, halting them on completing the wheel. Dressing is carried out as in Section 4 without further orders.

19. MASS CHANGING POSITION A HALF RIGHT.

Battalion
Com-
mander. **Battalion,
Change position
Half right;
Remainder, Form
—fours. Left.
Quick—March.**

Right company stands fast; remainder act as ordered. Commander of right company as soon as the order "Quick—March" is given will wheel his company through an eighth of a circle to the right, halting when completed and dressing his company as taught in company drill.

Remaining Company Commanders will halt their companies at the necessary distance, order them to turn right and will then dress their companies independently.

Battalion Warrant Officer will mark the distant point on the alignment as usual and be covered by the Second in Command.

Battalion C.G.M. will step off four paces from the left flank of the leading platoon of right company after it has been dressed. When right company is "steadied," remaining companies will be

Order by. Order.

Procedure.

wheeled through one-eighth circle to the right. As soon as wheels are completed, the company G.M.s will proceed to the new alignment and take post as Battalion C.G.M. marks their position, which is one pace in front of him. Battalion C.G.M. steps off the paces as soon as leading platoon of each company arrives in position.

Company Commanders march their Companies on to the new alignment when Gunner's Mates are placed.

As usual.

Battalion
Com-
mander. **Battalion,
Order—Arms.
By the right—
Dress.
(If desired).**

PART IX.

PISTOL DRILL AND
ACCOUTREMENTS.

THE WEBLEY PISTOL, Mk. VI.

(Plate 41.)

1. ACTION OF THE MECHANISM, Etc.

- (a) By the trigger action for *Continuous Practice*.
 (b) By the cocking action for *Single Practice*.

In both practices, after each shot, the trigger must be allowed to come back freely by releasing the forefinger as much as possible. As much greater accuracy can be obtained when firing single shots slowly than when firing all the chambers rapidly and continuously, the latter method should only be adopted on emergency.

The pistol is sighted to shoot accurately at 50 yards.

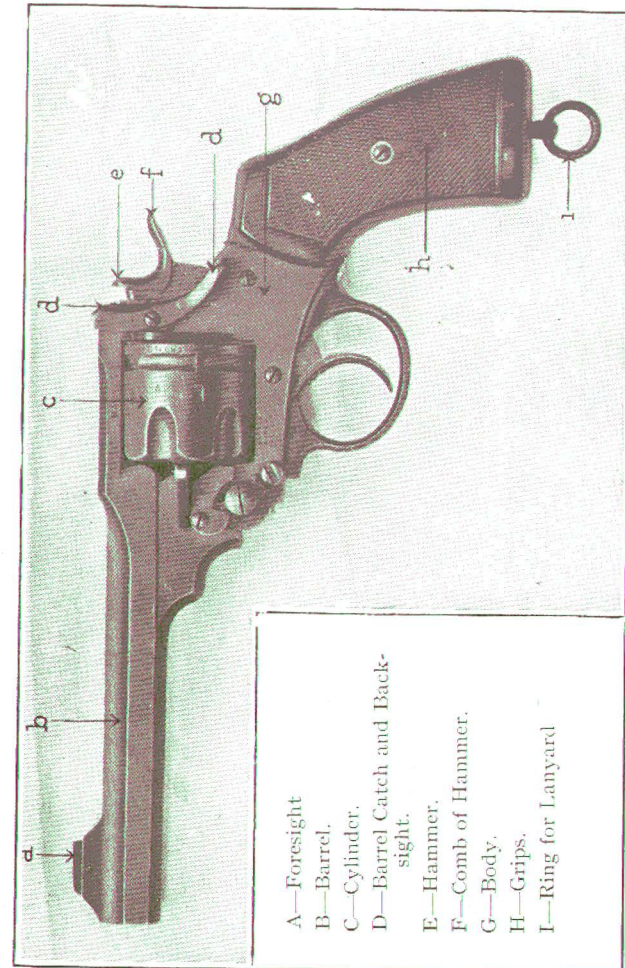
The pistol must be opened and closed gently, and only when the hammer is down. Neglect of this rule may result in :—

(a) Burring the extractor lever and the body, which will cause faulty extraction and difficulty in loading.

(b) Premature explosion.

(c) Injury to the extremity of the pawl, from which may result partial failure of rotation of the cylinder; and the pawl may not give its assistance in holding the cylinder in the firing position.

Every part of the pistol must be kept perfectly clean, and for this purpose mineral jelly or rifle oil and flannel-ette only, will be used. The cleaning rod should be passed down the barrel from the muzzle, and through each of the chambers of the cylinder.



Names of Parts of a Pistol (Webley Mark VI).



Position of "Ready" with the Pistol.

Whenever pistols are worn, lanyards are to be attached to the ring of the pistol and worn round the neck.

2. PISTOL DRILL.

Quick
Time.

Slow
Time.

Draw.

Draw the pistol with the right hand; holding it horizontal, and pointing to the left front, press the catch with the thumb of the right hand, and open the barrel with the left hand, turning it down as far as the stop; then pass the pistol into the left hand, holding it by the barrel, knuckles to the front, forefinger round the cylinder and thumb to the left of the cylinder. Cut away the right hand to the side.

Ready.

Load.

Place a cartridge in each chamber, replace the barrel by forcing up the butt, pass the pistol into the right hand, forefinger outside the trigger guard, and make a left incline, carrying the left foot back about 24 inches and placing the left hand on the hip. The pistol to be held at the full extent of the right arm and pointing well in front of the advanced foot.

Notes.—(i) Cartridges to be placed in the cylinder, commencing at 11 o'clock. Cylinder to be revolved to the left.

(ii) This is the ready position.

**Full
Cock.**

Force the hammer right back with the thumb of the hand holding the pistol.

Note.—This is called the *Ready*. If the order **Ready** is given to men with pistols in the holster loaded, they will *Draw* and assume this position. (Plate 42.)

- Fire. { Align the foresight on the mark, through the notch on the breech. Place the forefinger round the trigger. As soon as correct aim is obtained, press the trigger until the hammer falls, and return to the *Ready* position. (Plate 43.)
 Recock. { Recock with the thumb of the hand holding the pistol.
 Fire. { As before.
 Fire. { Spring to *Attention*, turn to the front, make a right incline (in order to point the pistol down the range) and open the pistol as in *Draw*, to throw out the empty cylinders; then turn to the front and load as before detailed.
 Re-Load. {
 Full-Cock. { As before.

Half Cock. Force back the hammer with the thumb of the disengaged hand. Then, lightly pressing the trigger, ease the hammer forward to the *Half Cock* position and return to the *Ready* position.

Stop. Half Cock and return the pistol to the holster.

Go On. Recommence firing at the same target as before.

Cease Firing. Reload and return the pistol to the holster.

Unload. Make a right incline. Draw the pistol from the holster, open the barrel carefully to prevent the extractor spring being released; then, holding the pistol by the barrel with the left hand, thumb inside the trigger guard, withdraw the unfired cartridges with



"Firing" Position with the Pistol.

the right hand, and return to the pouch; fully open and then replace the barrel, return the pistol to the holster, resume the position of attention, and turn to the front.

Stop. Unload. The pistols will be returned to the holsters unloaded.

Notes.—(i) Care is to be taken that all men are thoroughly conversant with pistol drill before they fire any rounds.

(ii) When aiming and firing, the butt should be firmly held, but without excessive pressure.

(iii) The order **Still** may be used to prevent an accident.

3. INSPECTION OF PISTOLS.

For inspection Draw the pistol and open the barrel, turning it down to the full extent;
—Draw. hold the pistol with the right hand on the stock, left hand on the barrel, and turn the cylinder to the front. After the officer has inspected the pistol, each man will replace the barrel, return the pistol, button the holster, and drop the hands to the sides.

4. PISTOL INSTRUCTION.

The sequence will be as follows, whenever possible :—

I. The squad will fall in with pistols in the holsters, or broken in the case of men without holsters.

II. The instructor will examine the pistols, which are then returned to the holster or kept broken.

III. The instructor will demonstrate and explain the correct and incorrect positions, while the squad *Stand at Ease*.

IV. Squad will perform the drill.

Note.—Men are always to break their pistols before aiming to ascertain that pistols are empty.

PISTOL ACCOUTREMENTS.

5. MILLS' WEB PISTOL EQUIPMENT.

Rucksack (Back-Adjustment Model), convertible into a Rifle Equipment.

The component parts of the equipment consist of the following :—

- (A) Waistbelt.
- (B) Cutlass Frog.
- (C) Brace Attachments (2).
- (D) Revolver Holster.
- (E) Ammunition Pouch.
- (F) Braces (1 left, 1 right).
- (G) Haversack.
- (H) Waterbottle Carrier.
- (I) Rucksack.

To convert the Pistol Equipment into a Rifle Equipment, the following parts are discarded :—

- (A) *Side-pieces* only of Waistbelt,
- (B) Cutlass Frog,
- (C) Brace Attachments,
- (D) Revolver Holster,
- (E) Ammunition Pouch,

and the following articles substituted :—

- Cartridge Carriers (1 left, 1 right),
- Bayonet Frog,
- Intrenching Tool Carrier.

DESCRIPTION OF THE EQUIPMENT.

(A) **Waistbelt.**—This is made of 2½-inch webbing with thick selvages, and has "flat loops" woven on the inside. It consists of 3 pieces, viz., right and left side pieces and a back piece for adjustment. The side pieces are provided with a belt buckle on the front ends, and double hooks on the rear ends; on the inside near the double hooks a loop is provided on each piece, to take the free ends of the back-adjustment piece. The

back-adjustment strap has two 3-bar 1-inch buckles on the outside, to take the rear ends of the braces; the ends are finished with metal pieces eyeletted to the fabric.

The back-adjustment model necessitates only one size of waistbelt as the adjustment strap is of such a length that the belt can be adjusted to fit large as well as small waists.

(B) **Cutlass Frog.**—This consists of a loop to slip on the waistbelt, and a body fitted with two horizontal loops. The scabbard is inserted and pushed through until the stud on the outside comes between the two loops.

(C) **Brace Attachments.**—These are interchangeable. They are provided with a "gate" slide for attachment to the belt. A piece of double webbing is attached to the top of the slide carrying a ring; to this ring a 4-bar curved buckle is attached by a piece of webbing. The buckles serve for the attachment of the front ends of the braces and the rucksack shoulder straps' hooks; the rings allow the free ends of the braces to pass down on the inside of the belt.

(D) **Revolver Holster.**—This is woven to a size to fit the revolver easily. The end of the barrel-tube is provided with a block to protect the fore sight. A large flap is provided with a snap fastener for closing. On the back two double hooks are attached, which engage the flat loops on the inside of the belt. The holster is lined with smooth material, to allow the revolver to be drawn and returned easily.

(E) **Ammunition Pouch.**—This is a woven box-shaped pocket, of substantial weave. It is provided with a covering flap having a snap fastener. A double-hook is attached to each end of the pocket to engage the flat loops on the inside of the belt. Across the top corners of the pocket, small flaps are provided to prevent loose ammunition working out.

(F) **Braces.**—These are made of 1-inch webbing, broadening out to double width in the centre to form a wide bearing-surface on the shoulders. One brace has a loop sewn on the inside at the rear near to the broad part, through which the other brace passes; this connection prevents the braces from slipping off the shoulders.

(G) **Haversack.**—This is a rectangular shaped bag, having gusseted sides. The lid is closed by two $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch straps and buckles, and on each side a 1-inch buckle is provided to which the ends of the braces, which extend below the belt on the left side of the equipment, are attached. The haversack is provided with straps to enable it to be carried on the back in "fighting-order"; viz., a $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch horizontal strap is attached on the back at the top which passes underneath two web loops properly spaced and engages a buckle on the right side; on the bottom a $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch buckle is attached to each of the back corners, and a loop in each of the front corners. These loops and buckles on the bottom serve to retain two $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch straps when the haversack is worn on the side, and when worn on the back the buckles serve for adjustment of the straps.

(H) **Waterbottle Carrier.**—This consists of a skeleton framework in which the waterbottle is inserted and secured by a retaining strap having a snap fastener. The carrier is fitted with two buckles for attachment to the ends of the braces extending below the waist-belt on the right side of the equipment.

(I) **Rucksack.**—This is a large rectangular bag, having sides with weather flaps. Five narrow straps are provided around the rucksack, two on each side and one on top, to enable the blanket and waterproof sheet to be carried in the form of a roll outside the rucksack, all the small articles of the kit being carried in the bag. A 1-inch strap is attached to the outside of the lid for securing mess-tin in cover, but this article may be carried inside the rucksack if there is sufficient room.

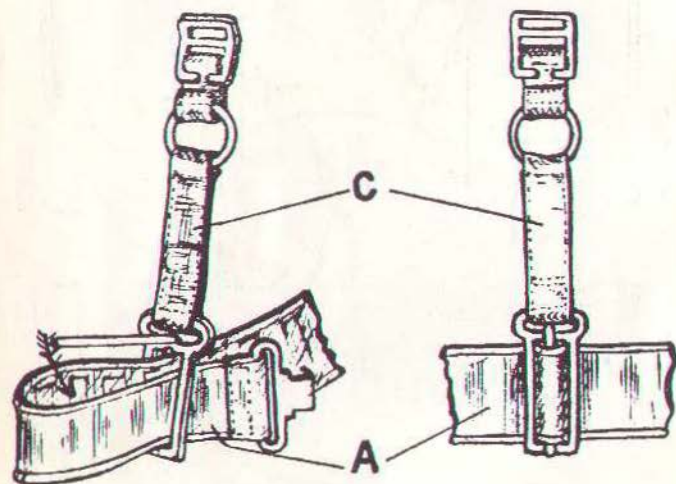


Fig. iii.—Pistol Equipment.

The rucksack is carried and attached to the rest of the equipment by means of shoulder-straps, broadened similar to the braces, adjustable through buckles at the top and having hooks on the narrow ends to engage in the "D's" of the buckles on top of the brace attachments or cartridge carriers.

Narrow "diagonal straps," adjustable through buckles, run from these hooks to the bottom of the rucksack, the left diagonal being permanently fixed by a metal "D," and the right being connected by means of a smaller metal "D" to a hook, which latter fitting is attached to the bottom of the bag.

On the back of the rucksack near the bottom is a short strap having a key-hole fitting which engages a stud placed in the centre of the bottom of the bag. This strap is passed around the belt, to prevent movement of the rucksack when running.

METHOD OF ASSEMBLING.

(Plate 44.)

Order of
Assembling.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (A) Waistbelt. —Adjust to fit waist comfortably tight, by inserting hooks (A 1) into woven loops on inside of back piece (A 2). (See Fig. ii) | 1 |
| N.B.—Adjustment must be made each side equally. | |
| (B) Cutlass Frog. —Slide on left end of waistbelt, so that it will hang, when the belt is put on, upon the left hip | 2 |
| (C) Brace Attachments (pair).—Attach to waistbelt (A) as shown in Fig. iii, so that when worn they will come in a direct line with the shoulders | 3 |
| (D) Revolver Holster. —Attach to left side of waistbelt (A), inserting hooks (D 1) into corresponding loops woven inside waistbelt | 4 |

Order of
Assembling.

(E) **Ammunition.**—Attach to right side of waistbelt (A) in a similar manner to the revolver holster (D) - - - - - 5

(F) **Braces** (pair).—Attach rear ends to buckles on back of waistbelt (A) so that they extend about 6 inches (on an average) below waistbelt - - - 6

Pass front ends through centre opening of buckles on top of brace attachments (B) allowing sufficient "free end" to extend below waistbelt about 6 inches (on an average). Secure to buckles and pass through ring on brace attachment (C) - 7

N.B.—All four ends of Braces to extend below waistbelt equally.

(G) **Haversack.**—Secure brace ends on left side of equipment to buckles on sides of haversack 8

(H) **Waterbottle Carrier.**—Attach buckles on sides to brace ends on right side of equipment - 9

The equipment is now put on.

(I) **Rucksack.**—Put on separately by taking hold of left shoulder strap with right hand and slinging on to left shoulder. The right shoulder strap is grasped by right hand, passed over right shoulder, and the metal "D" (I.1) slipped over hook on bottom corner.

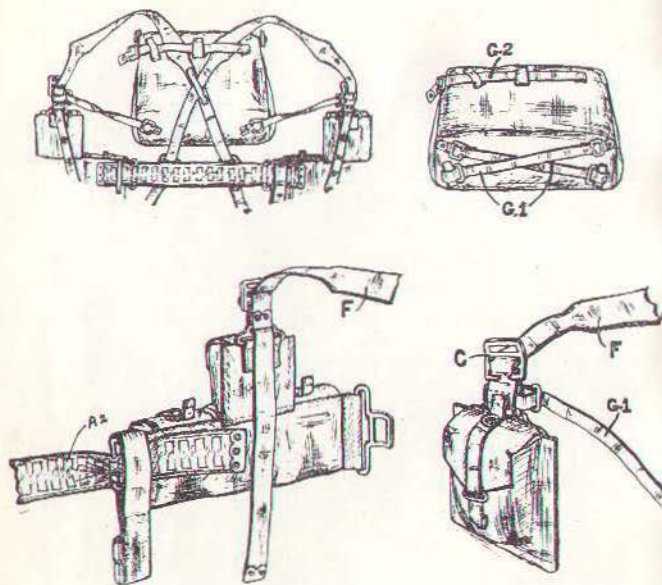
The hooks on shoulder straps are finally attached to the top bar of buckles on brace attachments (C), thus keeping shoulder straps clear of arm pits - - - - - 10

To prevent movement of rucksack, the small strap with keyhole slot (I.2) can be passed around waistbelt and slipped over stud in bottom of rucksack.

Note.—The shoulder straps and narrow "diagonal" straps should be so adjusted through their respective buckles (I 3 and I 4) as to allow the rucksack to be carried on a level with the



Pistol Equipment—Front View.



Pistol Equipment—Instructional Drawing.

lower edge of the waistbelt and close against shoulders. The diagonal straps should be adjusted fairly tightly, thus supporting and balancing the rucksack.

Plate 45. Pistol equipment (front view).

Plate 46. Pistol equipment (side view).

Plate 47. Pistol equipment (back view, showing waterproof sheet and blanket attached to rucksack).

Point of Attachment shown thus - →

Direction shown thus - →

Order of Assembling shown thus - ①, ② &c.

TO CARRY HAVERSACK ON BACK IN PLACE OF RUCKSACK.

(Plate 48.)

Lay equipment on ground, detach straps (G.1) from bottom of haversack (where they are retained when haversack is worn on side), pass round brace attachments (C) (just below buckle), through the metal loop and pull tightly. The straps are now attached to buckles on bottom corners. Unfasten narrow strap (G.2) and pull out of loops. Pass the strap (G.2) over braces and through loops alternately, finally securing to small buckle on side of haversack.

Note.—The straps (G. 1) should be so adjusted that when worn they support the haversack, the top of the haversack merely being held against back by means of the strap (G. 2). (See Plate 49.)

DESCRIPTION OF THE ARTICLES REQUIRED FOR CONVERTING THE PISTOL EQUIPMENT INTO A RIFLE EQUIPMENT.

(Plates 48, 49 and 50.)

Cartridge Carriers (120 rounds).—These, connected to the back-adjustment strap of the 3-piece belt, form the cartridge belt. Each carrier has four pockets, one pocket

being situated above three. Each pocket is made to contain 15 rounds in three clips, each clip being separated by a partition. All the pockets have lids of thick material, each having a strap fastening for the prevention of loss of ammunition. On the front ends of the cartridge carriers a belt buckle is attached, and on the rear ends double hooks are provided to engage the back-adjustment strap.

Each carrier has a buckle attached to the top to take the front ends of the braces, the buckles having an extra opening at the top to form a "D" for the attachment of the rucksack.

Narrow web loops are provided on the inside of the carriers at the rear ends to take the spare ends of the back-adjustment strap.

In the rear end of the left cartridge carrier a fastener stud is provided to engage a socket in the suspension loop of the bayonet frog.

Bayonet Frog.—This has a loop for suspending on the rear end of the left cartridge carrier, it being secured thereto by the socket in the suspension loop engaging the stud in the rear end of the carrier. The bayonet is passed through the two loops at the bottom, the stud on the scabbard coming out between the two loops. The loop at the top of the frog is passed over the hilt to prevent undue swinging of the bayonet when marching.

Intrenching Tool Carrier.—This is in the form of a flat tapered bag, enabling the head part of the tool to be carried in an upright position. It is lined with a fine canvas so as to allow the tool-head to be put in and taken out of the carrier easily. A metal "cup" is placed in the bottom of the carrier, which takes all the weight of the tool head, the pick part resting in this cup. Two buckles are placed on the back of the carrier for suspension from the ends of the braces on the right side of the equipment. Two loops are also provided on the right side of the tool carrier for carrying the helve. A short tab is fixed in the centre of the carrier on the outside,



Conversion of Pistol Equipment into Rifle Equipment.



Conversion of Pistol Equipment into Rifle Equipment.

to which is fastened the buckle at the bottom of the waterbottle carrier.

The waterbottle carrier for use with the intrenching tool carrier is exactly the same as in the pistol equipment, except that it has a buckle at the bottom to engage the short tab on the tool carrier.

Rifle Equipment.—To convert pistol equipment, parts A (side-pieces only), B, C, D and E are discarded, and a pair of cartridge carriers, bayonet frog and intrenching tool carrier, are substituted. Cartridge carriers are attached to back-adjustment strap; tool carrier to ends of braces on right side, with bottle carrier on outside.

Plate 49. Front view, full marching order.

Plate 50. Side view, showing position of haversack on back in place of rucksack and how diagonal straps clear arm-pits.

PART X.

FIELD GUN DRILL.

(Note.—* denotes the sections into which the drill should be divided when giving full detail.)

1. DESCRIPTION OF GUN AND LIMBER, AND NAMES OF PARTS TO BE REFERRED TO IN THE DRILL.

(Plates 51 and 52.)

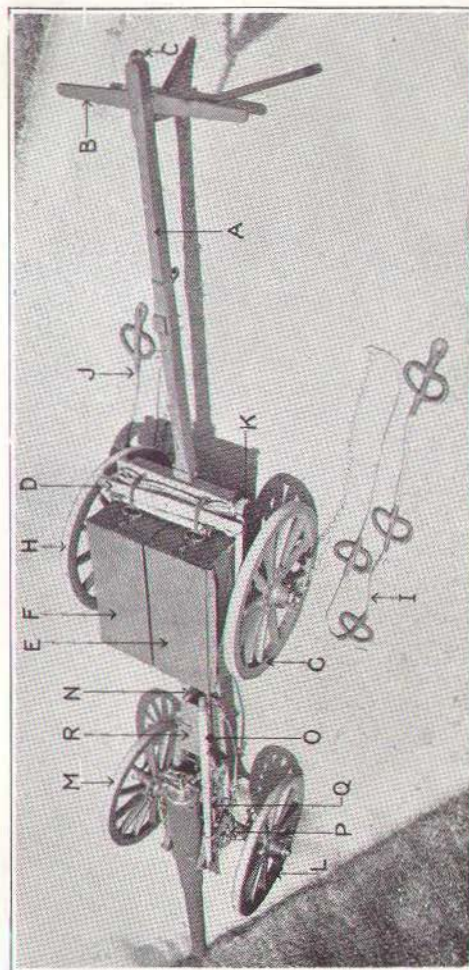
Gun.—12-pdr. 8-cwt. Q.F.

Track of wheels, 3 feet 6 inches.

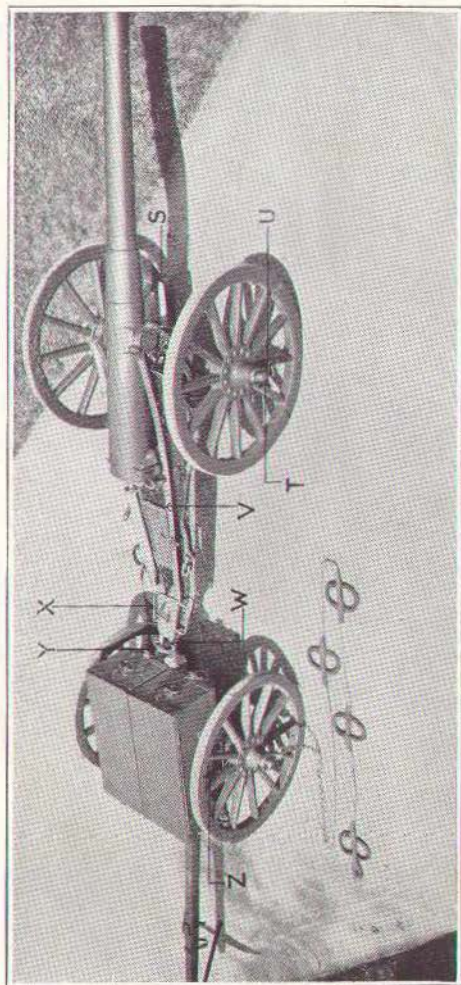
Crew, 18 men.

Ammunition carried in two limber boxes, 24 rounds.

- A. Pole.
- B. Slat.
- C. Ring.
- D. Swingle-tree, spare slat, harness.
- E. Right limber box.
- F. Left limber box.
- G. Right limber wheel.
- H. Left limber wheel.
- I. Right drag rope.
- J. Left drag rope.
- K. Spade.
- L. Left gun wheel.
- M. Right gun wheel.
- N. Trail.
- O. Handspike.
- P. Drag-shoe.
- Q. Hammer.
- R. Trail-box.
- S. Spare handspike.
- T. Linch-pin.
- U. Drag-washer.
- V. Carriage.



8-cwt. Field-Gun and Limber.



8-cwt. Field Gun and Limber.

- W. Trail-plate eye.
- X. Trail handle.
- Y. Pin tail.
- Z. Axe.

2. DETAILING A GUN'S CREW.

18 men will be fallen in, in two ranks.

As a 12-pdr. 8-cwt. Field Gun's Crew, Number. The right hand-man will call "1," the next "2" and so on to the left of the front rank; the left-hand man of the rear rank will call "10," the man on his right "11" and so on to the right of the rear rank.

3. FORM THE ORDER OF MARCH.

Form the Order of March. The gun's crew, moving at the double, place themselves as follows:—
1 on the right in line with the trail, one yard clear of the wheels.

- 2, 4, 6 and 8 on the left drag rope outside.
 - 3, 5, 7 and 9 on the right drag rope outside.
 - 12, 14, 16 and 18 on the left drag rope inside.
 - 13, 15 and 17 on the right drag rope inside.
- The lowest numbers being the rear numbers.
10 and 11 on the pole, 11 being on the right.
17 and 18 join hands.

Take up Pole and Drag Ropes.
(In slow time only.)

The drag ropes are taken in hand and the pole raised. The numbers on the drag ropes take a pace forward to tauten out the drag ropes, and the pole numbers set back on the pole to prevent the gun from moving forward.

4. CHANGE ROUNDS.

Change—Rounds. 2 becomes 1, 1 becomes 3, and the remaining numbers move round one place from right to left, those on the right of the drag ropes moving up, and those on the left dropping back one pace; 11 becomes 10, and 10 becomes 12.

5. GUN'S CREW TO THE FRONT, RIGHT, LEFT OR REAR.

Gun's Crew to the Front (Right, Left, or Rear). 1, moving at the double, places himself 5 yards in front of the drag ropes; 10 and 11 ground the pole, remaining numbers ground the drag ropes.

Double—March. All numbers will double out and form on No. 1 thus:—

2, 4, 6, 8, 1, 9, 7, 5, 3,
10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 17, 15, 13, 11.

Form the Order of March. } As before detailed.

6. DUTIES OF THE MORE IMPORTANT NUMBERS.

Number.	General Duty.	Action Duty.
1	General charge.	Captain of the gun.
2	Gun wheel men	Breech worker—fires by order of 1.
3		Loading number.
4	Double (gun) wheel men.	Loading number.
5		Trainer.
6	Limber wheel men.	
7		
8		Limber boxes, fuze setters, &c.
9	Pole numbers; 10 is in charge of limber.	
10		
11	Double (limber) wheel men.	
15		

7. MARCHING, CHANGING DIRECTION AND HALTING.

The Gun will Advance. A caution for 8 to select points to march on.

Quick (or Double)—March. The gun's crew move direct to their front at the named pace.

Right (or Left), Incline. The direction is changed an eighth of a circle to the right (or left). 8 selects fresh points to march on.

Right (or Left), Take Ground. The direction is changed a quarter of a circle to the right (or left) at the double. 8 selects fresh points to march on.

Right (or Left), Reverse. The direction is changed half a circle to the right (or left) at the double. 8 selects fresh points to march on.

Right (or Left), Wheel. The gun's crew change direction by gradually circling round until the order **Forward** is given.

Halt. The gun's crew halt; 12 and 13 turn round and assist 10 and 11 on the pole to stop the gun and limber; the numbers then tauten the drag ropes.

Note.—*Inclining, Taking Ground, Reversing or Wheeling* from the *Halt*, will be carried out in the usual manner on the order **Quick (or Double)—March**.

8. GUN BACK—WHEN LIMBERED UP.

Gun Back. (When limbered up.) The wheel numbers man their wheels (on their own side). The remaining numbers turn about, 12 and 13 assist 10 and 11 on the pole.

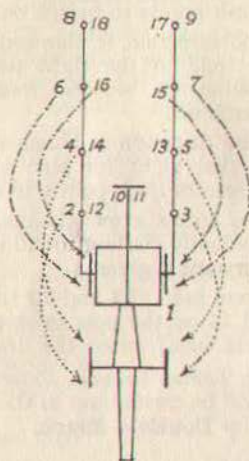
Quick—March. The wheel numbers, 10, 11, 12 and 13 force the gun and limber to the rear, 10 being responsible for the direction. The remaining numbers, except 1, keep the drag ropes slack.

Halt. The gun's crew halt, turn to the front and man the loops.

Should these numbers be unable to move the gun and limber, **Double Wheel Men** will be ordered.

Double Wheel Men. 4, 5, 15 and 16 assist 2, 3, 6 and 7 on their wheels respectively, lowest numbers nearest the muzzle.

DIAGRAM SHOWING WHEELMEN
AND DOUBLE WHEELMEN



Halt. The gun's crew halt, turn to the front and man the loops.

Should they still be unable to move the gun and limber, **Reverse—Drag Ropes** will be ordered.

Reverse—Drag Ropes. 12 and 13 unhook the drag ropes from the limber drag-washers and hook them on to the gun drag-washers. Drag rope numbers reverse outwards to the rear, moving at the double.

Halt. The gun's crew halt.

Reverse—Drag Ropes. The drag ropes are reversed by 12 and 13 as above, and all numbers man the loops.

Note.—When, as in *Battery Drill*, it is required for one gun to dress up, order **Gun Forward** may be given in a similar manner, when the wheel men will man their wheels.

9. UNLIMBER AND LIMBER UP.

Unlimber. 1 unkeys the pintail and lifts at the left trail handle.

4 lifts at the right trail handle.

5 between 1 and the breech lifts at the trail.

2 and 3 man the gun wheels, 6 and 7 the limber wheels.

When the trail is clear, 1 gives the order **Move Off**.

Limber up. 1 orders **limber back**. The gun is then limbered up by the same numbers who unlimbered. 1 orders **Form the order of March**.

10. ASCENT OF AN INCLINE.

For a moderate or short incline the quickest and best way is to go up at the double—No. 1 orders **Gun's Crew Double March**—and when over the top of the incline orders **Quick March**.

When gun and limber cannot be taken up together they should be taken up separately—No. 1 orders **Halt—Unlimber—Move off**. 10 moves limber off, giving the orders necessary to take it clear of track of gun.* 1 then orders **With Drag-ropes, up gun**; 12 and 13 unhook drag ropes from limber, 12 passes his drag rope through trail plate eye, down through one trail handle, up through the other, and hooks it to its own part, in rear of trail plate eye, 13 hooking his drag rope to the end of that of 12.

All numbers man the drag-ropes, except 1, 4 and 5; 4 and 5 man the trail handles and lift trail, 1 gives the necessary orders to take the gun up the incline. When clear of the top, gun will be taken clear of the track of the limber. 1 orders **Halt, Unhook drag ropes** (12 unhooks drag ropes from trail); 1 orders **With drag ropes—Up limber**. Limber will be brought up in a similar manner, 12 hooking the drag ropes to the ring at the end of the pole, 10 and 11 man the slats, when the limber is in advance of the gun 1 orders **Halt, Unhook drag ropes—Limber up**, 12 and 13 unhook their drag ropes and

hook them to the limber drag-washers. 1 to 7 limber up, 1 orders **Form the order of March, Gun will Advance—Quick March.**

11. DESCENT OF AN INCLINE.

In all cases of approaching an incline 1 is to double out to the front to ascertain its nature.

Moderate Incline.—When the gun is on the brow of the hill 1 orders **Halt—Reverse drag ropes.** Wheel men man their wheels and drag ropes are reversed as before detailed.

1 orders **Quick March**, and, as soon as the gun is fairly on the move, the wheel numbers man their loops. On arriving at the bottom of the incline, 1 orders **Halt—Reverse drag ropes**, 12 and 13 unhook their drag ropes and hook them on to the limber drag washers, drag rope numbers reversing outwards to the front; 1 orders, **Gun will Advance—Quick March.**

For a Steep Incline.—When the gun is on the brow of the hill 1 orders **Halt—Place drag shoes**, 2 and 3 assisted by 4 and 5 place the drag shoes on their respective sides and man their loops; 1 then orders **Gun will Advance—Quick March**, and the gun is drawn down the incline.

12. SHIFTING WHEELS WHEN UNLIMBERED.

Shift both Gun Wheels. At the gun :—
1 mans the muzzle of the gun in front.
8 and 18 man the muzzle of the gun on the left, 9 and 17 man the muzzle of the gun on the right.

3 and 5 man the left gun wheel, out linch pin and off drag washer, 3 being nearest the muzzle.

2 and 4 man the right gun wheel; out linch pin and off drag washer, 2 being nearest the muzzle.*

At the limber :—

7 and 15 man the right limber wheel; out linch pin and off drag washer, 7 being furthest from the pole.

6 and 16 man the left limber wheel; out linch pin and off drag washer, 6 being furthest from the pole.

11 and 12 in front, 13 and 14 in rear, prepare to lift the limber.

10 turns about* and orders **Lift.**

11, 12, 13 and 14 lift. 10 then orders **Shift.**

When the wheels are off, 6 and 16, 7 and 15 run them to the gun.*

At the gun :—When the limber wheels come up—

1 orders **Lift.**

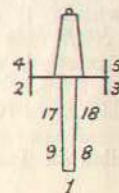
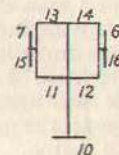
1, 8, 9, 17 and 18 lift. 1 then orders **Shift.**

2 and 4, 3 and 5 shift the wheels and replace drag washers and linch pins.

6 and 16, 7 and 15 bring back the disabled wheels to the limber when they will be shipped, 6, 7, 15 and 16 replacing drag-washers and linch pins.

All numbers then resume their original positions.

Notes.—(i) Shifting one gun wheel is carried out in the same manner as in shifting both gun wheels, except that the gun and limber are hauled over on the wheel which is not being shifted.



SHIFT BOTH GUN WHEELS

(ii) Should a wheel be disabled in action, it should be immediately turned so as to bring the sound portion to the ground.

13. SHIFTING WHEELS WHEN LIMBERED UP.

Shift Both Gun Wheels. 1 orders **Halt, Unlimber, Move off**, and, when clear, **Shift both (the Right or the Left Gun Wheel(s))**. The numbers occupy the same places as before detailed.

As soon as the wheels are shifted, 1 orders **Limber up, Form the Order of March, Quick (or Double) March.**

Notes.—(i) 8, 9, 17 and 18 need not cross over, but should go to nearest side of gun.

(ii) If, while shifting wheels, or from any other cause, the gun should capsize, 1 orders **With drag ropes, right gun**—12 and 13 unhook their drag ropes, 12 taking a round turn on top of the tyre of one wheel, across carriage, under the axle inside the collar the opposite side and hooked to its own part. 13 hooks his drag rope to that of 12. 2, 4, 3 and 5 man their wheels, 8 will steady the gun at the muzzle, 9 at the trail.* All other numbers except 1 man the drag ropes, 1 giving the necessary orders. If necessary 1 would order **Shift drag ropes**—12 hooking his drag rope to gun drag washers.

When the gun is righted, 1 orders **Unhook drag ropes**, 12 and 13 unhook their drag ropes and hook them to the limber drag washers; the gun's crew limbering up and forming the order of march.

(iii) If the gun should fall to the ground whilst shifting one or both wheels, it can be raised by the numbers lifting as in *Shift both gun wheels*, 4 and 5 lifting in front of the axletree, wheel men putting on the wheels.

14. ACTION FRONT.

In Slow Time.

As previously detailed in Part X, Section 9, and then :—

Front—Unlimber. 4 shifts to the trail plate eye. 1, 4 and 5 lifting the trail well up, bear it round half a circle

10 orders **Limber back**; all numbers turn about and the limber is backed to the left rear, and is halted in line with the gun 5 feet clear on the left, by order of 10.*

6, 7, 8 and 9 lift the limber boxes off the limber and place them on the ground in line with the left gun wheel, 6 and 7 in front, 8 and 9 in rear, 8 giving the order to **Lift.**

6 and 7 man their loops, and the limber is moved off at the double by order of 10 to the Limber Position.

10 orders **Limber back—Right incline—Double march—Limber halt.**

This will be some previously selected position on the flank offering suitable cover.

For drill purposes, 15 yards to the left and rear for a single gun.

10 and 11 prop up the pole, the limber's crew then extend to the right and left and lie down.*

Note.—Should there be no cover for the limber, it will be dismounted.

At the gun.—When the trail is round :—

2 opens the breech.

1 lays the gun horizontal, sees the bore clear, and reports **No. 1 or — Gun—Bore clear**—and places himself on the left in line with the breech, clear of the wheel.

2 closes the breech and places himself on the right in line with the breech, clear of the wheel.

2 and 3 man the gun wheels and assist 4 and 5 to place and secure the drag shoes.

3 places himself in rear of 1.

4 provides the hand extractor and places himself in rear of 2.

5 ships the handspike and places himself in rear of 3.*

8 and 9 open the limber boxes, 8 hands the tube pocket to 2, 9 procures the sights and hands them to 1, who ships them.

8 and 9 then prepare the ammunition, kneeling (for drill purposes, standing) in the rear of the boxes.

Gun Wheel numbers man their wheels; 1,
Forward. 4 and 5 manning the trail, 8 and 9 the
or Gun Back. drag shoes if necessary.

Quick— } As ordered.
March. }

Gun—Halt. As ordered.

Note.—**Gun back**, as for gun forward, numbers turning about.

15. RANGE, DEFLECTION, NATURE OF SHELL, FUZE AND OBJECT.

Range— 1 adjusts the sight and takes up his
Deflection. position to lay the gun, 5 manning the
handspike. (Plate 53.)

2 opens the breech and cocks the striker.

8 and 9 adjust the fuses as ordered and supply
ammunition to 3 and 4.

Nature of Shell 3, in front of 1, enters the projectile.

—**Fuze** 4, in rear of 2, enters the cartridge.

Setting— 2 closes the breech, then opens it
Object. sufficiently to enter the percussion tube
and then closes the breech.

3 and 4 step clear and turn to the front.*

When the gun is laid, 1 orders **Ready**, 2 hooks the
firing lanyard and reports **Ready**.

1, 2 and 5 step clear, 1 and 5 turn to the front,
the whole kneeling down (Plate 54.)

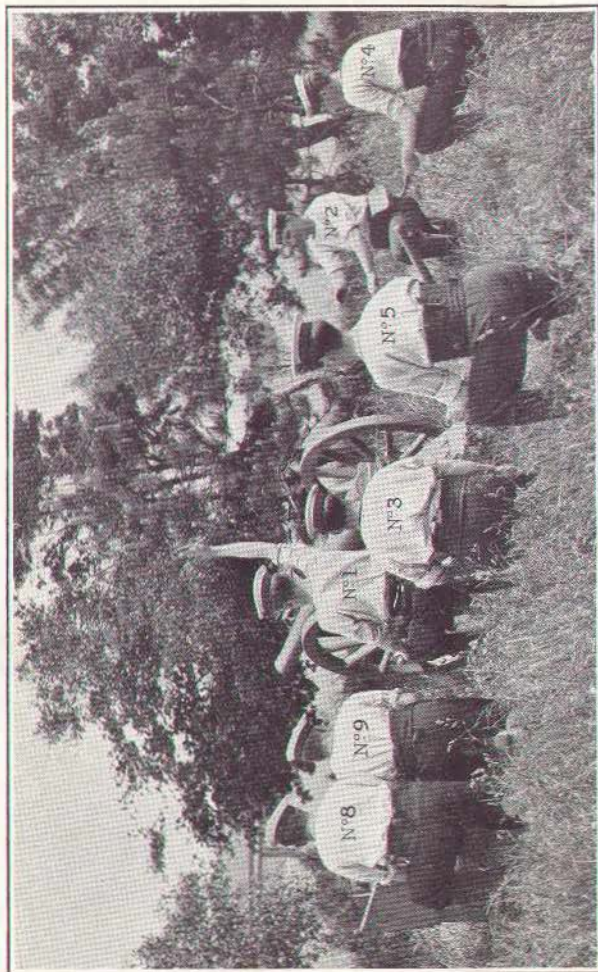
Note.—On active service the above two sections
are combined on the naming of the range, deflection,
shell and object.

Signal.

Nature.	By Whom given.	Meaning.
Either hand raised above his head.	No. 1. During ranging for ele- vation.	My gun is loaded and laid.



"Manning the Handspike."



Field Gun's Crew in Action.

Fire No. — 1 orders **Fire** and drops his arm.
Gun. 2 fires and unhooks firing lanyard, and turns to his front.

Gun Forward. As before detailed.

Load. As for *Object*, 4 extracting the empty cylinder.

16. STOP FIRING.

If the gun is loaded:—

Stop firing. 2 opens the breech.
 4 extracts the cartridge carefully and removes the tube from the adapter, returning the cartridge to 8.
 2 closes the breech and eases the striker forward.
 All numbers turn to the front.

If the gun is empty:—

2 closes the breech and all numbers turn to the front.

Unload. As taught in Q.F. gun drill, 5 forcing back with the handspike.

17. SECURE.

Secure. 1 gives the gun extreme elevation, unships the sights and hands them to 9, who returns them.

2 makes up the firing lanyard and returns the tube pocket to 8.

4 returns hand extractor.

2 and 3 man the gun wheels.

4 and 5 remove and hook up drag shoes.

5 unships and buckles on the handspike.

8 and 9 return ammunition, see fuzes set at safety and close the boxes.

10 and 11 secure the prop.

At the gun :—

Front— 1 lifts at the left trail handle.
Limber up. 4 at the trail plate eye.
 5 on the left of 1 at the trail.
 2 and 3 man the gun wheels.
 1, 4 and 5 bear the trail round half a circle, keeping the trail up.*

At the limber.

Limber comes up to the limber boxes at the double by order of 10.

10 gives the order **Halt** when square with boxes.

6, 7, 8 and 9 place limber boxes on limber.*

1 orders **Limber up.**

1, 4 and 5, as in unlimbering.

2 and 3 at the gun wheels.

When the trail is on the pintail, 1 keys it, and gives the order **Form the Order of March.**

Action, Right. As for *Action Front* except that the gun is trained in the required direction and limber turned to the right before removing the boxes.

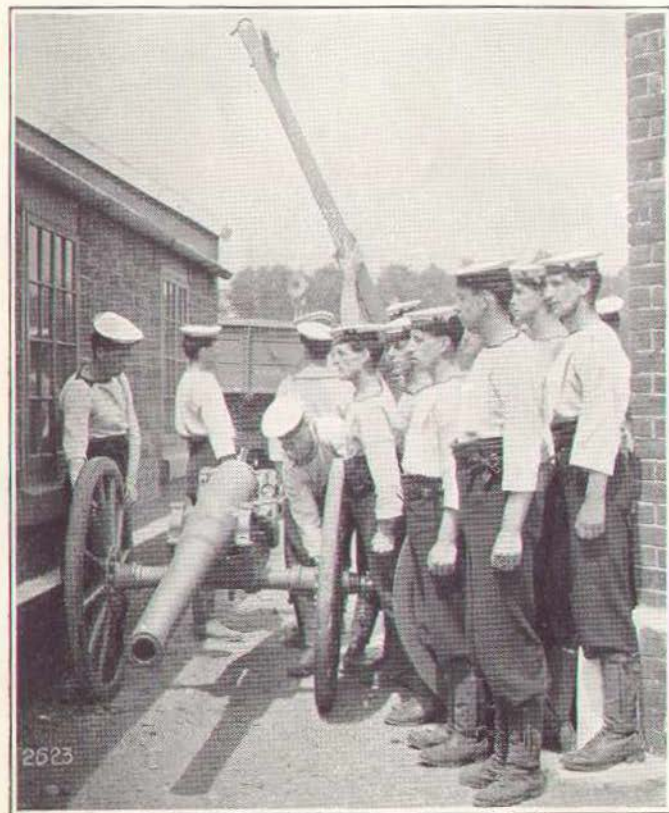
Action, Left. As for *Action Front* except that gun is trained in the required direction, and limber reverses to the right, then takes ground to the right, halting 5 feet clear of left gun wheel.

These movements of the limber should be done on its own ground.

Action, Rear. As for *Action Front*, the limber reversing to the right and halting 5 feet clear of the left gun wheel.

Notes.—(i) In *Action Left*, 5 lifts at the trail on the right of 4. No number is ever to walk backwards when carrying the trail.

(ii) When in action the necessity of keeping the wheels as level as possible should be impressed on No. 1. If it is impossible to get the wheels level, the error, if small, may be corrected by moving the "H" up.



Reversing in a narrow passage

**Right (Left
or Rear),
Limber—up.**

As for *Front Limber—up*, except that the gun is limbered up in the named direction. The limber being first halted in line with the boxes facing in the same direction as when dismounting the limber boxes.

18. REVERSING WHERE THERE IS NOT ROOM TO REVERSE IN THE USUAL MANNER. (Plate 55.)

**Right (or Left)
Reverse.**

If on the march, 1 orders **Halt, Unlimber, Move off**, the limber is run forward 6 yards, the pole then turned in the direction named, and eased up by 10, 11, 12 and 13, the remaining limber numbers taking cover as shewn.

1 then orders **Quick March**, 1 to 5 then take the gun under the pole; when clear, 1 orders **Halt, Limber—up**; the gun is then reversed to the left (or right); the gun is limbered up in the new direction; 1 then orders **Form the Order of March, Quick (or Double) March**.

19. DISMOUNT.

Dismount. 1 and 3 disconnect and remove the elevating arc.

2 and 4 remove the breech mechanism.*

The numbers then occupy the same stations as in shifting gun wheels with the following exceptions:—

4 and 5 lift in front of the axle-trees.*

Then 1 and 10 give the order **Lift**.

2 and 3 remove the gun wheels.

6, 7, 15 and 16 remove the limber wheels.

The gun, limber and wheels are then lowered to the ground.*

3 and 4 then unkey and turn back the cap squares.

5 places the handspike in the breech.*

2, 3, 4 and 5 man the handspike; 1, 8, 9, 17 and 18 lifting at the muzzle; 1 then orders **Lift**. The gun is lifted out of the carriage and placed on the left.

The numbers then extend to the right and left and lie down.

Should it be necessary to abandon the gun, the order **Retire with the gear** will be given.

20. RETIRE WITH THE GEAR.

Retire with the Gear.

All numbers double to the rear taking gear as follows:—

1 and 2, breech block and hinge pin.

Wheel numbers, linch pins and drag washers.

21. REMOUNT.

Remount.

1 and 10 order **Lift**.

The numbers occupy the same position as in dismounting. When the gun is in the carriage, 3 and 4 key the cap squares*; 1 then orders **Lift**.

The same numbers ship the wheels who unshipped them.

5 replaces the handspike.

1 and 3 ship and connect up the elevating arc.

2 and 4 ship the breech mechanism and all numbers resume their former positions.

22. REMOVING A DISABLED GUN CARRIAGE.

(Plate 56.)

The gun is first dismounted, the limber comes up on the left of the limber boxes, which are then replaced on the limber and the limber is then placed with the axletree over the trunnions of the gun.*

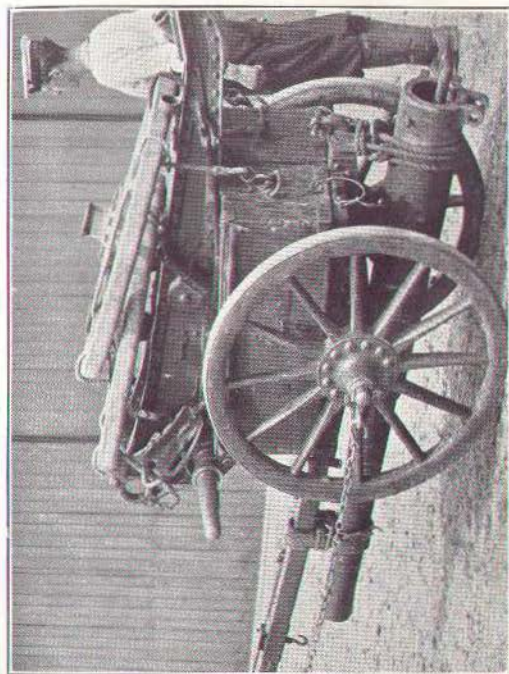
12 provides the light drag ropes.

13 places the handspike in the breech of the gun.

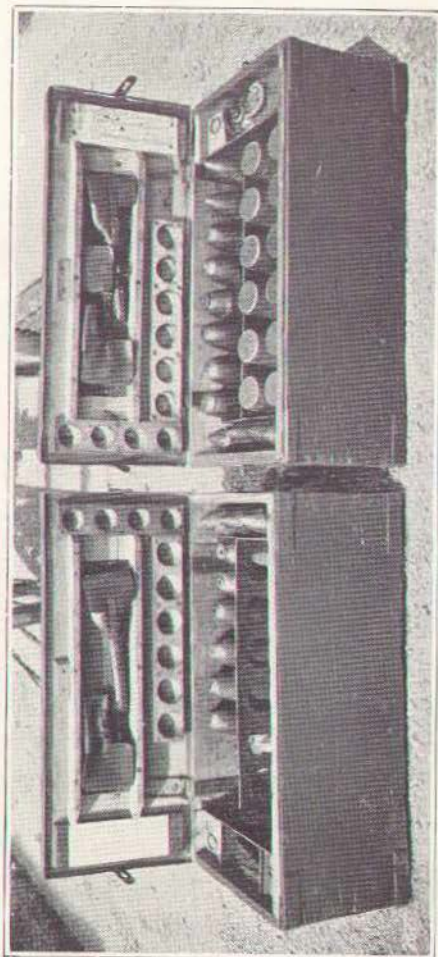
14, 15 and 16 lift at the handspike.

12 and 13 secure the breech of the gun close up to the pintail with a short drag rope, 10 and 11 raising the pole to assist them.*

The same numbers then secure the muzzle of the gun to the pole with the other light drag rope, 10 and 11 lowering the pole.*



Removing a Disabled Gun Carriage.



Limber Boxes.

At the carriage, 1 orders lift, 1, 4, 5, 8, 9, 17 and 18 lift the carriage on to the limber, trail to the rear.*

1 and 2 place the breech mechanism in the front part of the carriage.

2 and 4, 3 and 5 place the wheels on the trail.

1, 2 and 3 secure the carriage, &c., on the limber, lashing it if possible.

1 gives the order *Form the order of march.*

Note.—All small stores should be placed in the limber boxes. In placing the carriage on the limber, the axletree should be close to and in front of the limber boxes.

23. STORES TAKEN WITH GUN AND LIMBER.

(Plate 57.)

Limber.

- 1 spade on the side of the right limber box.
 - 1 hand axe on the side of the left limber box.
 - 1 bill hook under the limber on the right in front.
 - 1 pick axe under the limber on the left in front.
 - 1 grease-box under the limber on the left in rear.
 - 1 bucket under the limber on the right in rear.
 - 1 swingle-tree - - -
 - 2 slats - - -
 - 1 pair of light drag ropes
 - 1 set of men's harness -
- } Strapped on the limber in front of the limber boxes.

Trail.

- 2 handspikes - - - 1 on the left bracket, 1 under the trail.
 - 1 clawhammer - - - on the left bracket.
 - 1 hand extractor - - -
 - 1 short rimer - - -
 - 1 universal fuze key - - -
 - 1 screwdriver - - -
- } In the upper tray of the trail box.

2 wrenches D and E	-	} In the lower tray of the trail box.
1 punch	-	
1 drift	-	
1 oilcan	-	
1 spanner for the elevating gear	-	
1 MacMahon spanner	-	
1 file	-	

In box of small stores: 1 spring for breech screw retaining catch, 1 preserving screw for foresight, 2 keep pins for hinge bolt, 2 keep pins for actuating link, 2 keep pins for nut on breech lever, 2 keep pins for extractor axis, 1 trigger complete, and 1 metal block for breech mechanism.

24. DRILL FOR 12-PR. 18-CWT. Q.F. GUN ON FIELD CARRIAGE.

Gun 12-pr. 18-cwt. with P. IV* cradle and elevating gear on steel field carriage, with limber containing 32 rounds and full charges.

Track of the wheels, 5 ft. 4 in.

The gun's crew required to man the gun and limber in action consists of 5 men at the gun and 2 men at the limber.

To drag the gun on average roads, a crew of about 36 men are required, and may be placed as follows:—

1 on right in line with the trail 1 yard clear of wheels.

2 on left in line with the trail 1 yard clear of wheels.

4 and 6 on the left drag rope outside (loops nearest the gun).

3 and 5 on the right drag rope outside (loops nearest the gun).

7 and 8 on the pole front slat.

9 and 10 on the pole rear slat.

The remaining numbers divided on the drag ropes, even numbers on the left, and odd numbers on the right.

The orders given in 12-pr. 8-cwt. drill for moving the gun and crew, unlimbering and limbering up, are also

applicable here, and the drill is generally similar, with the following exceptions:—

The limber complete is left at the gun.

No drag shoes are supplied, a brake being fitted in lieu.

3, 4, 5 and 6 are the wheelmen.

The duties of the numbers at the gun are as follows:—

1 the gunlayer.

2 breechworker.

3 projectile loader.

4 cartridge loader and hand extractor.

5 trainer (handspike only).

On the march 2 attends the brake when required, 1 giving the necessary orders.

The duties of the numbers at the limber are:—

8 in charge of the limber.

8 and 9 keep up the supply of ammunition from limber to the gun and supply and return the sight telescope, tube pocket, tubes, &c.

25. STORES TAKEN WITH 12-PR. 18-CWT. GUN.

Limber.

The limber box contains 32 rounds, stowed 13 in front, 13 in rear, and 6 on the left side. It also contains the box of small stores in which will be found the following:—

Sliding block, firing lanyards (2), 8 split pins, extractor spring, catch retaining breech screw open, safety stop, striker, 4 boxes of percussion tubes.

On the outside of the box, spade and pick-axe.

On the front platform - Light drag ropes, swingle-tree, slats, hand axe, telescope box.

Under limber - Grease box, buckets.

The following are also taken away :—

Wrenches T.D.E.
Key protecting shield.
Key universal fuze.
Key base fuze and plug.
Drift.
Punch.
Hand extractor.
Claw hammer.
File.
Trail eye.
Drag washer (spare).
Cotton packing.
Piasaba and wool cleaners.

28. MISSEFIRES.

As laid down in B.L. and Q.F. gun drill.

PART XI.

BATTERY DRILL.

1. ORGANISATION AND GENERAL RULES.

1. A battery of field guns may consist of any number of guns, but it is usual not to have more than six.

2. A field battery is commanded by a Battery Leader. The battery for convenience of manipulation, ranging, and detaching is divided into sections, each section consisting of two guns under a section leader.

3. For administrative purposes the sections of the battery are numbered (1), (2) and (3) respectively, while the sub-sections consisting of single guns are lettered *A* to *F*; *A* and *B* sub-sections forming No. 1 section; *C* and *D*, No. 2; *E* and *F*, No. 3; each section is sufficiently self-contained to be detached at any moment.

4. At drill or manœuvres, however, the sections are termed *right*, *centre*, or *left*, and the sub-sections are numbered 1 to 6 as they stand in line without reference to the number or letter of organisation.

In column they are termed *leading*, *centre* or *rear*.

5. In addition to the guns' crews, each gun should have a marker, whose position is always on the left of the leading men of his gun's crew. He is responsible for the distance between guns and his position relative to the section leader.

6. There should be a Chief Petty Officer for each battery, his general position being in rear, or on the reverse flank, in the centre of the battery.

7. The Battery Leader should always have a bugler with him.

8. The Officers do not require their swords except for inspections or for marching past.

9. On the march, and when in action, Section Leaders repeat all orders and signals given by the Battery Leader.

Orders passed, in action, by Battery Leaders to Section Leaders, and by Section Leaders to Section Leaders, are acknowledged by a salute with the hand; if the salute is not given, the order will be repeated.

10. When the battery is at *Full Intervals*, the guns are 12 yards apart; when at *Half Intervals*, 6 yards; at *Close Intervals*, with the leading numbers on the drag ropes touching the marker of the next gun.

11. A battery has no fixed right or left, and only acknowledges the front to which the guns point in action, or the numbers turn when limbered up.

12. It is to be distinctly understood that guns are to get as rapidly into action as possible, and are to be moved as seldom and as quickly as possible from one position to another. The guns of a battery in action should not be discharged together, but a continuous fire kept up: they are always to be discharged before limbering up.

13. A battery limbered up should always dress forward. In action the dressing is on the axletree of the gun of direction, but it should be borne in mind that the inversion of the usual order, or the exact preservation of the intervals or dressing, are matters of little importance on service; the nature of the ground should govern the positions of the guns, so that the guns and limbers should be afforded as much natural protection as possible from the enemy's fire.

2. SIGNALS FOR A FIELD BATTERY.

Nature of Movement.

Signal.

Advance forward or Commence movement.	} The arm swung from rear to front below the shoulder, finishing with the hand pointing to the front.
Halt	
	- Arm raised at full extent above the head.

Nature of Movement.

Signal.

Double	- - -	- Clenched hand moved up and down between thigh and shoulder.
Quick	- - -	- Hand raised in line with the shoulder, elbow bent.
Incline	- - -	- Body turned in the required direction and arm extended in line with the shoulder.
Take ground	- - -	- Hand brought to the shoulder and the arm then extended sharply in the required direction two or three times.
Wheel	- - -	- Circular movement of extended arm in line with the shoulder in the required direction.
Reverse	- - -	- Circular movement of the arm above the head, using right or left arm according to right or left reverse.

Note.—When reversing at half intervals, the signal must be made twice, the first being the signal for the odd-numbered guns to mark time, the second the executive for carrying out the movement.

Nature of Movement.

Signal.

Form line from echelon.	} Two or three slight movements of the open hand, palm to the front (arm extended, hand waist high), denoting a forward movement, looking to each flank in turn.
Form echelon from line.	
Full intervals - (<i>Note (a).</i>)	
	- As above, but the palm to the rear, denoting a backward movement.
	- Arm at full extent over the head and waved a few times slowly from side to side, the hand to

*Nature of Movement.**Signal.*

- be open and to come down as low as the hip on both sides of the body.
- Close intervals** - Hand placed on top of the head, the elbow to be square to the right or left according to which hand is used.
(*Note (a).*)
- Half intervals** - Raise the arms sideways in line with the shoulders, and bend the forearms vertically.
(*Note (a).*)
- Sections** - - - The same as above, but only one arm—that which best can be seen.
- Deploy** - - - Arm waved horizontally from right to left and back again, as though cutting with a sword, finishing with a point in the direction in which it is required to deploy.
- Mark time** - - - Hands raised and lowered alternately in line with the waist, palms towards the ground.

Notes.—(*a*) The gun on which the movement is to be carried out should be pointed out first, if it be other than the gun of direction.

(*b*) A short blast on the whistle should precede all signals.

(*c*) Officers giving signals should, as far as possible, face the same way as those to whom the signal is made, but when a signal ordering a change of direction is made the body should be turned in the required direction.

(*d*) All signals should be made with whichever arm will show most clearly what is meant.

Signals of position, such as *Halt* or *Incline*, should be maintained.

Signals of movement, such as *Advance* or *Wheel*, should be repeated until it is clear that they are understood.

The whistle is used—

To draw attention to orders - - -

Short blast.

To denote the *Alarm* Alternate long and short blasts.

To call markers - Succession of short blasts.

3. POSTS OF OFFICERS. (See Diagram.)

1. The *Battery Leader* is the Officer personally leading and controlling the movements of the battery. He should be well to the front. Should the Battery Leader for any reason temporarily cease to act as Battery Leader, his place will be taken by the senior Section Leader.

2. The *Battery Guide* is the leader of the directing section, which is the second from the right (or in Column and Echelon the leading section). He is responsible for the direction and pace of the battery, and follows and conforms to the movements of the Battery Leader.

3. Each *Section Leader* is guide of his own section which regulates itself exclusively by him. He takes his dressing and interval from the Battery Guide. The cohesion of a battery depends on the manner in which Section Leaders preserve their relative positions.

4. *Battery Leader*.—Where he can best superintend the movements of the battery. In order to carry out this principle effectually he should not remain too close to his command.

In Line or in Line of Battery Columns, the normal position is in front of the centre, three paces in front of the line of Section Leaders.

5. *Section Leaders.*—*In line*, three paces in front of the centre of his section.

In Column.—The leading Section Leader as in line, the remainder in the centre of their sections in line with the front rank.

In Column of Sub-Sections or Column of Route.—The leading Section Leader three paces in front of the leading sub-section, the remainder three paces on the left flank of the centre of their sections.

MOVEMENTS OF A BATTERY.

4. ASSEMBLY.

A battery is usually assembled in Line at Full intervals, but it may be assembled at any interval or in Column.

5. TELLING OFF A BATTERY.

Tell off by Sub-sections. The Numbers 1 call the-number of their guns in succession from the right.

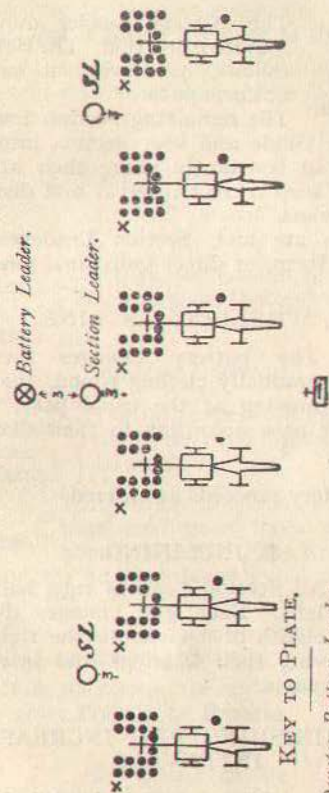
6. DRESSING IN LINE.

By the Right (or Left)—Dress. The Markers will double out and are covered from the named flank by the Section Leader, who will order *Steady*.

Quick—March. The Numbers 8 will lead their guns up to the Markers, and the Section Leaders will order **Halt** just before arriving in position. When his guns have ceased to move, the Section Leader will order **Dress up**, at which order the guns' crews dress gradually up, keeping the drag ropes taut, until the leading numbers are up to the Marker's fist.

Steady. This order is given by the Section Leader when the movement is completed. Markers take post.

A BATTERY IN LINE.



KEY TO PLATE.

⊗ Denotes Battery Leader.

○ " " " " " " " " " "

× " " " " " " " " " "

⊞ " " " " " " " " " "

⊞ Chief Petty Officer.

7. ADVANCING IN LINE.

The Battery will Advance, Quick (or Double)—March.

The Battery Leader moves in the required direction. The Battery Guide follows, preserving a smooth and uniform pace. The remaining Section Leaders dress by the Battery Guide and keep section intervals from him, but without constantly fixing their attention on him. Markers keep correct interval and distance from the Section Leaders.

If obstacles are met, Section Leaders lead their sections round them, or direct individual guns to evade them.

8. WHEELING IN LINE.

Right (or Left)—Wheel. The battery changes direction by gradually circling round, the outer gun moving at the usual pace, the others regulating their pace according to their distance from the pivot flank.

Halt or Forward. } Battery proceeds as ordered.

9. INCLINING.

Right (or Left) Incline. All Section Leaders turn half right (or left). Each gun changes direction an eighth of a circle to the right (or left), markers preserving their bearings and intervals from their Section Leaders.

10. DIMINISHING AND INCREASING INTERVALS.

Half (Close or Full) Intervals on No. — Gun. Unless a gun is named, the opening and closing is done on the Battery Guide. He moves straight forward, the guns of his section being inclined inwards at the double by the orders of their Numbers 1.

Outer sections are inclined in the required direction at the double by orders of their Section Leaders. Each gun as it arrives in place is given the order **Right (or Left) Incline, Quick March** by order of its No. 1.

Note.—If already moving at the double, the named gun's crew will step short during the movement, No. 1 giving the necessary orders.

11. RETIRING IN LINE.

(i) *Full Intervals.*

The Battery will Retire, Right (or Left) Reverse, Quick—March.

Each gun reverses in the usual manner. Markers place themselves as before.

(ii) *Half Intervals.*

The Battery will Retire, Prepare to Reverse, Quick—March.

The odd-numbered guns' crews mark time; the even-numbered crews move forward.

Right (or Left) Reverse. This order is given when the even-numbered guns have moved forward about 15 yards. The whole will reverse together, and the odd-numbered guns' crews will again mark time till the even-numbered guns are in line.

Forward. This order is given by the Nos. 1 of the odd-numbered guns when in line.

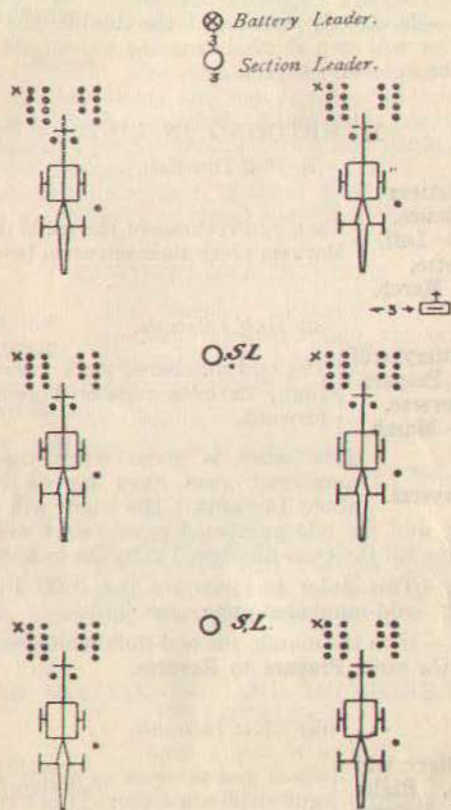
Note.—If on the march, the odd-numbered guns mark time at the order **Prepare to Reverse**.

(iii) *Close Intervals.*

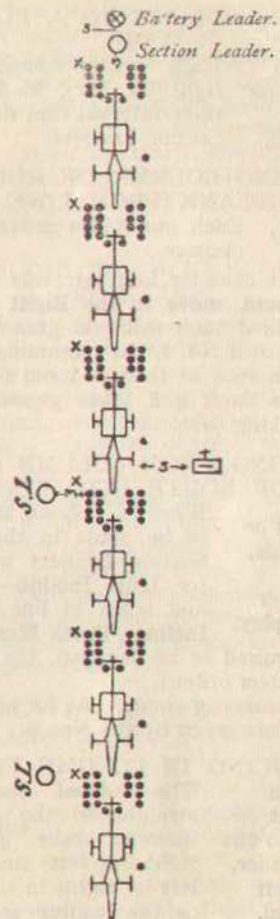
The Battery will Retire, Right (or Left) Reverse, Quick—March.

Each gun reverses as taught in field gun drill when there is not room to reverse in the usual manner.

A BATTERY IN COLUMN.



A BATTERY IN COLUMN OF SUB-SECTIONS OR COLUMN OF ROUTE.



12. FORMING COLUMN TO A FLANK FROM LINE.

Sections into Column Right (or Left) Wheel, Quick—March. Each section wheels round to the right (or left), Markers preserving their interval and dressing on their Section Leaders.

13. FORMING COLUMN OF ROUTE TO A FLANK FROM LINE.

Right (or Left), Take Ground. Each gun takes ground in the usual manner.

Note.—If at close or half intervals the order is **In Column of Route, move to the Right (or Left)**. The gun on the named flank will take ground and move off by order of its own No. 1, the remaining guns following in succession as soon as there is room for them. If on the march the flank gun takes ground at once, the remainder marking time.

14. DEPLOYING FROM COLUMN OR COLUMN OF ROUTE INTO LINE.

At Full (Half or Close) Intervals, to the Right (Left or Outwards), Deploy. *When in Column* and no change is to be made in the intervals, the Section Leaders will order **Right (or Left) Incline—Double March**, and when in line **Left (or Right) Incline—Quick March**. (If the intervals are required to be changed, the Nos. 1 of guns will give the latter order.)

When in Column of Route. As for in Column except that all orders are given by the Nos. 1.

15. ADVANCING IN COLUMN FROM LINE.

Advance in Column, Right (or Left) Section to the Front, Remainder, Right (or Left) Take Ground, Quick—March. The named section advances straight to the front. The remainder take ground to the right (or left) and again to the left (or right) in succession in rear of the leading section, by order of the Section Leader.

Note.—If at half or close intervals, or advancing in column from the centre (at any interval), the order is **Advance in Column, Right (Left or Centre) Section to the Front**, at which order the named section will be moved forward by its Section Leader, the remainder following in succession by the shortest line as soon as there is room for them. If on the march the named gun leads on, the remainder marking time. When advancing from the centre the right section follows the centre, and the left section follows the right.

16. ADVANCING IN COLUMN OF ROUTE FROM LINE.

Advance in Column of Route, No. — to the Front; Remainder, Right (or Left) Take Ground, Quick—March. The named gun advances straight to the front; the remainder take ground to the right (or left) and wheel to the left (or right) in succession in rear of the named gun, by order of their Nos. 1.

Note.—If at half or close intervals the order is **Advance in Column of Route, No. — to the Front**, at which order the named gun is advanced by its No. 1; the remainder follow in succession by the shortest line as soon as there is room for them. If on the march the named gun leads on, the remainder marking time. In advancing from the centre the left sub-section of the centre section follows the right sub-section, and then those of the right section.

17. ADVANCING IN ECHELON FROM THE CENTRE, OR FLANK, FROM LINE AT THE HALT.

Advance in Echelon from the Centre (Right or Left). Section Leader of the named section advances his section straight to the front, and the remaining sections are stepped off by their Section Leaders as the preceding section arrives at a distance of 40 yards ahead of them, maintaining the proper interval to the flank.

12. FORMING COLUMN TO A FLANK FROM LINE.

Sections into Column Right (or Left) Wheel, Quick—March. Each section wheels round to the right (or left), Markers preserving their interval and dressing on their Section Leaders.

13. FORMING COLUMN OF ROUTE TO A FLANK FROM LINE.

Right (or Left), Take Ground. Each gun takes ground in the usual manner.

Note.—If at close or half intervals the order is **In Column of Route, move to the Right (or Left).** The gun on the named flank will take ground and move off by order of its own No. 1, the remaining guns following in succession as soon as there is room for them. If on the march the flank gun takes ground at once, the remainder marking time.

14. DEPLOYING FROM COLUMN OR COLUMN OF ROUTE INTO LINE.

At Full (Half or Close) Intervals, to the Right (Left or Outwards), Deploy. *When in Column and no change is to be made in the intervals, the Section Leaders will order Right (or Left) Incline—Double March, and when in line Left (or Right) Incline—Quick March.* (If the intervals are required to be changed, the Nos. 1 of guns will give the latter order.)

When in Column of Route. As for in Column except that all orders are given by the Nos. 1.

15. ADVANCING IN COLUMN FROM LINE.

Advance in Column, Right (or Left) Section to the Front, Remainder, Right (or Left) Take Ground, Quick—March. The named section advances straight to the front. The remainder take ground to the right (or left) and again to the left (or right) in succession in rear of the leading section, by order of the Section Leader.

Note.—If at half or close intervals, or advancing in column from the centre (at any interval), the order is **Advance in Column, Right (Left or Centre) Section to the Front,** at which order the named section will be moved forward by its Section Leader, the remainder following in succession by the shortest line as soon as there is room for them. If on the march the named gun leads on, the remainder marking time. When advancing from the centre the right section follows the centre, and the left section follows the right.

16. ADVANCING IN COLUMN OF ROUTE FROM LINE.

Advance in Column of Route, No. — to the Front; Remainder, Right (or Left) Take Ground, Quick—March. The named gun advances straight to the front; the remainder take ground to the right (or left) and wheel to the left (or right) in succession in rear of the named gun, by order of their Nos. 1.

Note.—If at half or close intervals the order is **Advance in Column of Route, No. — to the Front,** at which order the named gun is advanced by its No. 1; the remainder follow in succession by the shortest line as soon as there is room for them. If on the march the named gun leads on, the remainder marking time. In advancing from the centre the left sub-section of the centre section follows the right sub-section, and then those of the right section.

17. ADVANCING IN ECHELON FROM THE CENTRE, OR FLANK, FROM LINE AT THE HALT.

Advance in Echelon from the Centre (Right or Left). Section Leader of the named section advances his section straight to the front, and the remaining sections are stepped off by their Section Leaders as the preceding section arrives at a distance of 40 yards ahead of them, maintaining the proper interval to the flank.

When formed in line, the battery may be put through any exercises that the Inspecting Officer may direct.

The march past may be carried out by sections in a similar manner, the rear sections following at wheeling distance.

Unless otherwise ordered, the whole battery will take orders when marching past from the Battery Leader.

Note.—Instructions for a battery on active service will be found in "O.U. 5286.—R.N. Field Service Pocket Book."

PART XII.

MACHINE GUN DRILL (LEWIS GUN).

1. POSITION OF GUN AND STORES.

For elementary drill, the Lewis gun is placed on the ground resting on butt and bipod, with a canvas cover fastened over the working parts. The spare parts bag and the magazine carrier containing four magazines are placed two paces clear on the left of the gun. This position is known as the *Take Post* position and 10 paces in front of it there should be indicated another position known as the *Action Position*.

2. FALLING IN.

On the command **Fall in** the squad will fall in in single rank, five paces in front of the gun, dress and stand at ease.

3. NUMBERING.

As taught in *Squad Drill*.

4. CHANGING ROUNDS.

As taught in *Gun Drill*.

5. TAKING POST.

On the command **Take Post**—

No. 1 takes up a lying position in rear of the gun, removes the canvas cover and examines the gun as follows:—

- (i) Sees that the barrel mouth piece is screwed hard up.
- (ii) Sees that the clamp ring screw is screwed hard up.

(iii) Sees that the small hole of the gas regulator is to the rear and the gas regulator key in place.

(iv) Tries the mechanism by pressing the trigger and working the cocking handle backwards and forwards.

(v) Sees that the pawls are correct.

He then takes a magazine from No. 2 and places it on the gun. No. 2 takes up a lying position on the left of the magazine carrier.

Examines and puts on spare part bag.

Examines magazines and then reports to No. 1 *Magazine and spare parts correct.*

He then hands a magazine to No. 1 and closes the carrier.

When No. 1 is satisfied with the gun, he reports *Gun Correct.* The remainder of the squad turn right and, moving at the double, fall in in rear of the gun, dress and stand at ease.

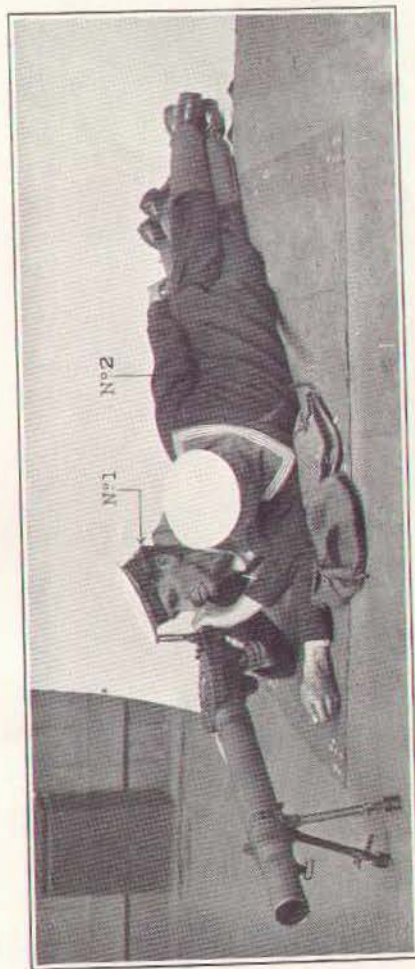
6. SIGNALS.

The following signals are used by the Lewis gun Commander (or Instructor) in controlling fire:—

Stand by to open fire	-	Arm bent, elbow close to the side, hand open and palm to the front.
Open fire	-	Hand cut away to the side from the above position.
Stop	-	Elbow close to the side, hand open and forearm waved horizontally.
Cease Firing	-	Arm swung from the shoulder in a circular motion in front of the body.

7. ACTION. (Plate 58.)

After the naming of the range and target followed by the order **Action**, No. 1 adjusts the sight to the range ordered and lowers the leaf, runs forward with the gun, right hand grasping the small of the butt and left hand under the radiator casing and touching the bipod. On



Machine Gun in Action.

reaching the *Action position* he throws the gun forward with both hands, and as soon as the bipod touches the ground, shifts the left hand to the small of the butt, drops on the right hand, shoots his legs out to the rear, and assumes the firing position.

No. 1 raises sight leaf, rotates magazine, pulls back cocking handle, lays the gun on the target, and reports **Ready** to No. 2.

No. 2 picks up the magazine carrier, runs forward in rear of No. 1, and lies down on the left of No. 1.

He then adjusts bipod (if necessary), takes one magazine out of the carrier, and lies as close to No. 1 as possible by lying on his left side, left arm extended and left hand under the magazine on the gun.

The spare magazine is held in the right hand and resting on the right leg, all ready for shipping.

When No. 1 reports *Ready*, No. 2 raises his right forearm, hand extended, and watches the Lewis gun Commander (or Instructor) for signals.

8. FIRE.

When the Commander (or Instructor) gives the signal *Open fire*, No. 2 touches No. 1 on the shoulder; No. 1 presses the trigger and fires in bursts of about one second each, checking his aim after each burst (for drill purposes leaving the cocking handle forward).

9. CHANGING MAGAZINES.

When a magazine is empty, No. 1 orders **Change**, No. 1 grips the magazine with the right hand, releasing the catch with the thumb. No. 2 helps to lift the magazine by pressing up the centre block with the left hand and then puts a full magazine on the gun with the right, pressing it down carefully. No. 1 passes the empty magazine (rim upwards) under the gun to No. 2, who replaces it in the carrier, rotates the new magazine, pulls back the cocking handle, relays the gun and continues firing.

10. STOP.

On the signal to stop, No. 2 repeats the order. No. 1 eases the trigger, pulls back the cocking handle, raises the safety catch, and orders change.

Nos. 1 and 2 change the magazine.

Before dropping the safety catch again, No. 1 pulls back the cocking handle to ascertain that the sear is engaged.

11. CEASE FIRING.

On receiving the signal *Cease Firing*, No. 2 repeats the order. No. 1 unloads, *i.e.*, removes the magazine, pulls back the cocking handle, takes aim and presses the trigger. He then lowers the leaf of the sight.

No. 2 helps No. 1 to unload, and replaces the magazines in the carrier.

Nos. 1 and 2 then retire with the gun and gear to the *Take post* position, and assume their original positions.

Note.—H.A. drill is similar to the above with following exceptions:—

- (i) Special tripod stand is provided.
- (ii) Gun's crew consists of 3 men, No. 3 carrying the stand.
- (iii) Nos. 2 and 3 change magazines instead of Nos. 1 and 2, in order that No. 1 may keep continuously laid on the target.

PART XIII.

GUIDES AND DIRECTING FLANK,
AND DRILL FOR MARKERS.

Two types of Drill have to be dealt with, *viz.* :

Parade Ground Movements, and
Ceremonial Drill.

PARADE GROUND MOVEMENTS.

1. TABLE OF GUIDES.

Formation.	Unit Guide.	Sub-Unit Guide.
(i) Unit in Line -	Section Leader on Directing Flank.	
(ii) Unit in Column of Fours	Leading Section Leader on directing flank.	Nil.
(iii) Unit in Column of Route.		
(iv) Unit in any other Formation.	Leading Section Leader on directing flank.	Leading Section Leaders on directing flanks of sub-units.
<i>If Marching, or Dressed, by the Centre:—</i>		
(v) Unit in Line -	Section Leader on the right flank of that sub unit whose centre or right flank lies in the centre of the unit.	Nil.

2. DIRECTING FLANK ON THE MARCH.

When Units or Sub-Units are Marching in Line.—Men will always march by the right, unless otherwise ordered. The order to March "By the Left" should be given in the following cases:—

- (i) Before forming to the left.
- (ii) When a unit or sub-unit marching in fours is brought into line by a right turn or two right inclines.

On the completion of these movements the order to march by the right should normally be given.

The directing flank will be unchanged when retiring, *i.e.*, if marching by the right when advancing, they will march by the left when retiring.

When the order "About turn" is given, the ranks are changed and hence the directing flank, so that if originally marching by the right men will again march by the right after turning about.

When Units or Sub-Units are Marching in Fours.—The Directing Flank will normally be the front rank side. Section Leaders march on the directing flank.

In column of route the directing flank will be that which is nearer to the side of the road on which traffic advances, *i.e.*, in England, the left.

3. PROCEDURE ON CHANGING DIRECTING FLANK.

Officers and Gunners' Mates.—Whoever is to direct the march (in the case of Company drill, &c.) takes post accordingly. Whoever was directing the march returns to his normal position in the formation; remainder retain their position unless ranks are changed, when they will take post as for a unit advancing.

Platoon Petty Officers.—If ranks are changed, they pass through the ranks of their platoon at the double and take post for a platoon advancing. If ranks are not changed, they retain their positions.

Section Leaders.—The new unit guide selects points to march on, new guides of sub-units march on the unit guide. Remaining section leaders march by the right or left as ordered.

Where a company in column or close column formation, whether acting independently or not, is marching to a flank in fours and changes its directing flank, *all* section leaders will cross over to the flank ordered. Similarly, if a column of fours is ordered to change its directing flank, all section leaders cross over to the flank ordered.

Men in the ranks march by flank ordered.

4. DRESSING AT THE HALT.

Men will always dress on the Unit or Sub-Unit guide and by the directing flank, which will be the same as when on the march.

Dressing is carried out without orders from the unit commander on the following occasions:—

(i) In platoon or squad drill where the unit concerned changes direction or increases frontage at the halt.

(ii) In company drill when, in completing a movement, platoons are halted in succession.

Platoon Commanders then give the order to their platoons to dress, as soon as their guides are placed, or, when halting in a company in line, as soon as the platoons next on their directing flank have got their dressing.

(iii) In Battalion Drill on all occasions except when forming mass from any other formation.

5. CEREMONIAL DRILL.

In general the same principles hold as in parade ground movements, *see* Chapter on Ceremonial Drill.

The smallest sub-unit in Ceremonial drill is the platoon.

DRILL FOR MARKERS.

6. THROWING OUT MARKERS PREPARATORY TO A UNIT FALLING IN.

Right section leaders will be known as "Markers" for the assembly of a unit.

Markers will not usually be required for any unit smaller than a company.

The following will answer the bugle "Markers" in addition to all Right Section leaders—

(a) Officers, Seconds in Command, of units and sub-units.

(b) All Chief Gunners' Mates and Gunners' Mates of units and sub-units.

Markers for a company will be thrown out as follows:—

The marker who will subsequently be the guide (*See Table of Guides*) will be placed, and the remainder will fall in standing at ease, on that side of him to which they will move when "Thrown Out" and facing the direction in which the company will face when fallen in.

Company-Second-in-Command will now order—

Markers—Attention. } As ordered.
Slope—Arms.

Markers—Number.

Give points in —*
from No. —,
outwards—Turn.

The remainder turn in the direction to which they will move.

* Second in Command names the formation.

Open to — Paces
Quick—March.

halt, call the number of his platoon, and turn in the direction of the guide.

As each marker halts and turns, his covering and distance from the guide will be checked by the Second-in-Command and Gunner's Mate respectively.

(i) *If the formation is to be column or close column, the Second-in-Command will order—*

Markers—Steady.

Order—Arms.

Stand at—Ease.

} As ordered.

The company will now be ordered to fall in on its markers.

(ii) *If the formation is to be line, the Second-in-Command will order—*

Markers—Steady.

At this order all markers will extend their right arms to the full extent to the right, fists clenched and backs of the hands upwards.

Platoons will then be marched on to the markers and dressed in line with the markers' fists. When the dressing is completed, the markers will drop the right arms to their sides, turn left, take one step back, and conform to the position of the rifle of the remainder.

When necessary to throw out Markers for the assembly of a larger unit than a company, the Unit Commander will direct that marks be placed for each company showing the position of its guide, and will indicate the direction the unit should face when fallen in.

Officers, Seconds-in-Command, of units larger than companies will supervise generally and will be assisted by their Chief Gunners' Mates.

Markers for each company will then be thrown out as laid down above,

7. COVERING THE MARKERS.

The Instructor will draw his sword (or Cutlass), face the markers, and raise his sword above his head with the flat of the blade towards the Markers.

To move a marker, he will call the number of that marker and incline the point of his sword in the required direction. The named marker will move as indicated and halt when his sword is brought vertical. Whenever a marker is moved, those in rear of him will immediately cover off without orders.

PART XIV.

CEREMONIAL, PARADES,
REVIEWS, THE KING'S COLOUR,
GUARDS, &c.

Note.—The procedure laid down in this Part cannot always be adhered to rigidly.

The considerations, which will affect the procedure to be adopted, are :—

- (1) The size and shape of the ground available.
- (2) The numbers taking part.
- (3) The composition of the forces present (*i.e.*, whether any Army, or Air Force units are present).
- (4) The wishes of the Reviewing Officer.

The following procedure is to be adopted when practicable.

1. GENERAL RULES.

Section Leaders.—All section leaders below the rate of Petty Officer should be sized and proved in the ranks.

All section leaders of Petty Officer's rate (except the two flank section leaders of the unit) will fall in two paces in rear of the unit and form a supernumerary rank, posting themselves evenly spaced along the rear of the unit.

Note.—If possible, the landing organisation of the ship's company should be adjusted to suit the above by making the outer section leaders of platoons, Petty Officers, and the inner section leaders, Leading Seamen.

When on the Ground.—Officers and men taking post, dressing, &c., should always move at the "Quick" and not at the "Double."

Marking Points and Markers.—Flags or posts may be set up to mark out the line on which the men are to form, or the line may be picked out or marked by whitewash.

Markers, if required, will act as laid down in Drill for Markers.

Marking out the ground preparatory to a March Past.—Flags should be placed, if possible, as shown in diagram below.

Dimensions of the Rectangle :—

For a Platoon	-	-	100 paces by 40 paces.
For a Company	-	-	160 paces by 80 paces.
For a Battalion	}	-	As requisite.
" Brigade			
" Division			

The side 2-3 flags, and the extension of same either way, will be known as the "Saluting Base."

The flags 5 and 6 may be placed, as shown, to mark the extension of the 2-3 flags.

The flags A-B will be placed ten paces on either side of the centre of the saluting base.

The "Saluting Point" will be ten paces behind the centre of the Saluting Base (*see diagram*).



Unit formed up for Inspection.

Unit falling in for a Review or March Past.—The unit will form up on the line 1-4 flags with the centre of the front rank on the centre of the line 1-4 flags, and facing the saluting base.

Position of Arms and Distance Apart of Ranks of a Unit Paraded for Inspection.—

Except as stated below in *Note*, the ranks will be four paces apart. During the inspection arms will be at the *Order*, Officers' swords at the *Carry*.

Previous to the Inspection.

The Unit Commander will order:—

Open Order—March - The rear ranks and supernumerary ranks in rear will step back two paces.

After the Inspection.

The Unit Commander will order:—

Close Order—March - The rear ranks and the supernumerary ranks in rear will step forward two paces.

Note.—A Company in close column will be inspected with ranks and platoons at usual company intervals. Arms to be at the *Order*, and Officers' swords to be at the *Carry*.

Drums and Band (or Buglers).—For inspection, the drums and band (or buglers) should fall in 20 paces in rear of the centre of the unit paraded for inspection.

For Marching Past, the drums and band (or Buglers) will be fallen in in two ranks 50 paces in advance of the leading sub-unit. The band will advance and commence playing as soon as the leading sub-unit advances on the Saluting Base.

When the drums and band (or buglers) arrive opposite the saluting point, they will turn to the left, wheel to the right, and halt and turn to the right facing the Saluting Point, continuing to play until the rear sub-unit has passed. The Bandmaster will face the saluting point.

Machine Gun Platoon and Transport.—If the machine gun platoon and transport are ordered to march past, the machine gun platoon will be five paces behind the

last company, followed at five paces distance by the transport.

Headquarters and H.Q. Wing.—The personnel of Headquarters and H.Q. Wing should not march past.

"Standing Easy."—The unit or any sub-unit should never be allowed to "stand easy," except by permission of the Commanding Officer of the parade, who should not give such permission unless there is an exceptionally long wait, such as prior to the arrival of the reviewing officer, or when a brigade or larger unit is marching past and the leading battalion has formed up past the 3 flag and is waiting to return in close column, while the other battalions are still marching past for the first time.

"FALLING IN," "SIZING," "PROVING," AND "DRESSING," &c.

2. FALLING IN PREPARATORY TO SIZING, PROVING, DRESSING, &c.

(i) *Platoon.*—The platoon will fall in "in Line" as taught in Platoon Drill.

(ii) *Company.*—The company will fall in either in:—

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>(a) Line
(b) Column
(c) Close Column
(d) Column or Close Column of Double Platoons.</p> | } | <p>As taught in Company Drill.
i.e., In two platoons only, each platoon being made up of two ordinary platoons joined together and sized as a whole.</p> |
|--|---|--|

(iii) *Battalion*.—The Battalion will fall in either in:—

- | | | |
|---|-----|--|
| (a) Mass | { | As taught in Battalion Drill. |
| (b) Close Column | | |
| (c) Mass or close column of companies containing two double platoons instead of four single platoons. | | |
| | | Each company as in (ii) (d) above. |
| (d) Close column of companies in line. | | Companies in line as in company drill, distance apart of companies to be 12 paces. |
| (e) Line | - - | Each company in line. The front ranks of companies in the same alignment, distance between companies to be five paces. |

Note.—If it is required to move a Battalion away from the formations (d) and (e) above, other than for marching past, the battalion should be formed into a "Column of Fours," i.e., for (d) similarly to a "Company in Close Column," Companies acting as platoons; for (e) similarly to a "Company in Line," companies acting as platoons and stepping out to close up on the leading company.

(iv) *Brigade*.—The Brigade may fall in "in line of battalions," the battalions being either in:—

- Mass (as taught in Battalion Drill).
- Mass, with companies using double platoons.
- Line.
- Close Column of "Companies in Line."

The distance apart of Battalions to be left to the discretion of the Brigade Commander.

3. SIZING A UNIT.

(i) *Platoon*.

Notes.—(i) The outer section leaders will stand fast during the whole procedure.

(ii) The remaining section leaders will act as laid down in Section 1.

(iii) The Platoon Petty Officer should assist the Platoon Commander when necessary, otherwise he should remain fast.

Platoon Commander will order:—

Tallest on the right,	The whole will turn right, break off and arrange themselves
Shortest on the left, in two-ranks—size.	according to their size in the ranks—the tallest on the right and the shortest on the left, carrying their rifles at the short trail, and take up dressing by the right.

Number -	- As ordered.
Slope—Arms	- " "
Stand fast	The front rank (except number 1),
number 1;	turns right, the rear rank
Ranks, right and left—turn.	turns left.

Form Platoon, Quick—March.	The whole will step off with the exception of number 1 of the front rank who will "Order" arms. The rear rank men wheel round and follow the left-hand man of the front rank. The odd numbers form the front rank, and the even numbers the rear rank. As the men arrive in their places, they will turn left, "Order" arms and take up their dressing by the right.
-----------------------------------	--

Note.—In the case of *double platoons*, the two platoons should be fallen in together in line, and be sized as a whole as taught above, the Note 1 above applying to the outer Flank Section Leaders of the two platoons together. The double platoon will be under the command of the senior platoon officer.

(ii) *Company*.—When fallen in:—

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) In Line - - | } The platoons will be sized separately, as taught in Section 3 (i) above. |
| (b) In Column - - | |
| (c) In close column - | |
| (d) In column or close column of double platoons. | |

- (e) In line preparatory to marching past in line. The company will be sized as a whole, as for a platoon in line, as taught in Section 3 (i) above, the two petty officers, who are the section leaders on the flanks of the company, will stand fast, the remaining section leaders of petty officer rate will drop to the rear and form a supernumerary rank two paces in rear of the rear rank, aligning themselves with the platoon petty officers, who should remain fast in the rear of the centre of their platoons as originally formed. The Section Leaders and the platoon petty

officers should place themselves at equal intervals apart. The section leaders of leading seaman rate will fall in and be sized in the ranks.

(iii) *Battalion*.—The companies will be sized independently as taught in Section 3 (ii) above.

(iv) *Brigade*.—As for Battalion in Section 3 (iii) above.

4. PROVING A UNIT.

(i) *Platoon*.—Platoon Commander will order:—

- | | |
|---|--|
| Number - - - | } The platoon will act as ordered, with the exception of the platoon Petty Officer and the section leaders of petty officer rate, who will stand fast. |
| Number 1 to - will be right half platoon, | |
| Number - to - will be left half platoon. | |
| Form—fours - - | |
| Form—two deep - | |
| About—turn - - | |
| Form—fours - - | |
| Form—two deep - | |
| About—turn - - | |

(ii) *Company*.—When fallen in:—

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) In Line - - | } The platoons will be proved separately as taught in Section 4 (i) above. |
| (b) In Column - - | |
| (c) In close column - | |
| (d) In column or close column of double platoons. | Each double platoon should be numbered and proved as a whole, as for a single platoon, as taught in Section 4 (i) above, the senior platoon officer taking command of the double platoon. The platoon petty officers |

should then align themselves two paces in the rear of the centre of the half platoons, the remainder of the supernumerary rank in rear taking post accordingly, so that they are evenly spaced along the whole unit, and in line with the platoon petty officers.

- (e) In line preparatory to marching past in line. The company will be told off into platoons as taught in Platoon Drill for telling off a platoon into sections. (See Page 145). If there is an odd number of men in the company, the outer platoons should be the larger. Then as for Section 4 (ii) (d) above for the P.O. and supernumerary rank in rear.

(iii) *Battalion and Brigade*.—The companies will be proved separately as above.

5. FIXING AND UNFIXING BAYONETS.

(i) *Platoon*.—Time will be taken from the right and left section leaders respectively, who will take three paces forward and act as taught in rifle exercises.

(ii) *Company*.

- (a) In line: As for a platoon above.
(b) In close column or column: Each platoon will act as above, all flank section leaders taking time from the flank section leader of the leading platoon (or double platoon).

(iii) *Battalion*.

(a) In Line: Each company acts independently, or as in note below.

(b) In close column: As for a company as in Section 5 (ii) (b) above, or as in note below.

(c) In mass: Each company acts independently as in Section 5 (ii) (b) above, or as in note below.

(d) In Close Column of Companies in Line: As for a close column, each company acting as a platoon.

Note.—If possible, all companies should take the time from the right or leading company.

(iv) *Brigade*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) In line of "Battalions in Line" | } Each Battalion will act as taught in Section 5 (iii) above, but if possible all battalions should take the time from the right or leading company of the brigade. |
| (b) In line of "Battalions in Mass" | |
| (c) In line of "Battalions in Close column of companies in line." | |
| (d) In Close Column. | |

6. DRESSING.

(i) *Platoon*.—Platoon Commander will order:—

Platoon, right—dress.—The men in both ranks will act as taught in squad drill, except they will not look to their front until they receive the order to do so. The right section leader will turn right, take four paces forward, turn about and dress the front rank. He will then turn left, take two paces forward (*Note*.—When the ranks are in "Open Order" he will take four paces forward), turn right and dress the rear rank. He will then turn right, take two (or four) paces forward, turn left and order "Platoon, eyes—front," and then regain his position on the right flank of the platoon.

*Brigade
Orders.**Battalion
Orders.**Procedure and Remarks.*

take their dressing from the right by orders from the Battalion Second in Command of the Right Battalion, this being the Army procedure.

The Battalion Commander will place himself 16 paces in front of the centre of the front rank of his battalion.

Brigade Commander will place himself 40 paces in front of the centre of the Brigade.

Brigade Staff 10 paces in rear of the Brigade Commander. If there are two Staff Officers, the Senior will be 10 paces to the right and the Junior 10 paces to the left.

Note.—If time permits the Brigade is ordered to stand at ease when the Officers have taken Post, and is called to Attention as the Reviewing Officer appears in the distance.

Given as the Reviewing Officer approaches.

Note.—Royal Salute is only given for H.M. The King or other Royal Personages. All other Reviewing Officers receive the General Salute. Band will play the Salute as follows—

(1) "National Anthem," or the first six bars of it for

Brigade will come to the Slope, Slope—Arms.
Brigade will come to the Present, Royal (or General) Salute, Present—Arms.
Repeat Brigade Caution.

*Brigade
Orders.**Battalion
Orders.**Procedure and Remarks.*

H.M. The King or other Royal Personages.

(2) "Rule Britannia" for a Naval Officer.

(3) "Salute from Norma" for a Military or Civil Officer. Officers salute with the sword. Brigade Staff Officers salute with the hand.

The Brigade Commander rides out to meet the Reviewing Officer and goes with him to right of the line.

Brigade will come to the Slope, Slope—Arms.
Repeat Brigade Caution.

Order—Arms.

Given by the Battalion Commanders directly the Brigade Commander moves out to meet the Reviewing Officer.

The Reviewing Officer rides down the front of the line from right to left and round behind the Brigade, accompanied by the Brigade Commander who rides on his outer flank.

The Brigade Staff precede the Reviewing Officer by two-horse lengths.

The Band plays a suitable march.

Given by the Brigade Commander as the Reviewing Officer rides across to the Saluting Point.

At the order "Quick March" Officers step off and proceed to their ordinary, non-ceremonial positions in the Battalion.

Officers will take Post.

Officers, Take—Post. Quick—March.

<i>Brigade Orders.</i>	<i>Battalion Orders.</i>	<i>Procedure and Remarks.</i>
	Close Order—March.	Given by the Battalion Commanders as soon as the Officers have taken post. Brigade will unfix Bayonets as taught in Ceremonial, Part 2.
Brigade will unfix bayonets, Brigade, Unfix—Bayonets.	<i>Repeat Brigade Caution.</i>	<i>Note.</i> —This should only be done if— (1) No further Ceremonial is to take place. (2) A Feu-de-Joie is to be fired.

Note.—The Reviewing Officer, Unit Commander and his Staff may be on foot instead of on horse-back, in which case the Unit Commander and his Staff will move direct to the right of the front of formation (after the Royal or General Salute has been given), where the Unit Commander will receive the Reviewing Officer with a Salute with the sword: the remaining Officers do not salute.

The Reviewing Officer will then inspect the Unit as above, accompanied by the Unit Commander on his outer flank and preceded by the Unit Commander's Staff at a distance of 4 paces.

If the Unit is reviewed in Column, the Reviewing Officer may wish to inspect each Sub-Unit separately, in which case each Sub-Unit Commander will receive him with a Salute with the sword, and will follow him during the inspection of his Sub-Unit (sword at the "Carry").

Unfixing Bayonets.—The Brigade may unfix bayonets as a whole, or by Battalions independently, as previously described.

8. FIRING A FEU-DE-JOIE.

The men will be drawn up, on the line 1-4 flags. "In line" formation, or as in Note at end of this Section. Arms at the Slope, the bayonets will not be fixed. The Commander of the Parade and his Staff will be posted in front of the line, or head of formation, at such distance as he may decide, and be turned towards it if desired. All other mounted Officers will be

in rear of the Unit. Three rounds of blank cartridge will be fired. If Artillery is present, and is ordered to fire 21 guns, 7 guns will be fired before each round.

<i>Brigade Orders.</i>	<i>Battalion Orders.</i>	<i>Procedure and Remarks.</i>
Brigade Officers will draw Swords. Brigade will fire a Feu-de-Joie.	Officers, Draw—Swords. Feu-de-Joie—March.	Officers draw Swords. At the order "Feu-de-Joie—March" Officers in front of the Unit (with the exception of the Officer in Command of the Parade and his Staff) will step forward three paces; the rear rank and supernumeraries will step back two paces.
Load.		This order is given immediately the Artillery commences firing. At this order the Flank Section Leader and the men in the ranks will load, as laid down for Ceremonial Firing (Part 2, Section 47). The muzzles of the rifles are to be inclined upwards so as to clear the heads of the men in front. The supernumerary rank in rear will "Order Arms."
Present.		This order is given directly the seventh gun has fired. At this order the rifles will be brought to the position for firing, but elevated at an angle of 45 degrees and dressed by the right.
Commence.		This order is given by the Battalion Commander of the right flank Battalion only, and immediately after the

Brigade
Orders.Battalion
Orders.Procedure and Remarks.

order "Present" has been given.

At this order the Right flank Section Leader of the right flank Sub-Unit will commence the fire which will run down the front rank and up the rear rank of the whole unit as quickly as possible. The Band will then play the first part of "God Save The King."

**Load. Present.
Commence.**

These orders are repeated after each series of seven guns fired by the Artillery.

The Battalions will act as ordered above.

The Band will play the second part of "God Save the King" after the second series, and the whole of "God Save The King" after the last series.

Officers' swords at the "Carry" throughout.

Unload.

At the conclusion of the whole of "God Save The King" after the third series, the order "Unload" will be given, when the men will come to the loading position and carry out the motions of unloading, remaining in the loading position, rifles elevated at an angle of 45 degrees.

Order—Arms.

The men will act as ordered. The mounted Officers will then move to their ordinary positions in the Unit formation and the Officers in front of the Unit (with the excep-

Brigade
Orders.Battalion
Orders.Procedure and Remarks.

tion of the Officer Commanding the Parade and his Staff), will step back three paces.

Bayonets will then be fixed as taught in Ceremonial Section 5 (iv) above.

**Brigade
will fix
bayonets,
Brigade,
Fix—
Bayonets.**

*Repeat
Brigade
Caution.*

**Slope—
Arms.
Royal
Salute,
Present—
Arms.
Slope—
Arms.
Order—
Arms.**

**Off—Caps
(or hats).
Note.—**

"Remove head
dresses" in Army
procedure.

The Brigade will act as ordered. The band will play "God Save The King."

As ordered. Three cheers will then be given. The caps (or hats) will be removed by, and retained in, the left hands, which will be raised to the full extent of the arms above the heads as the signal for each cheer is given. Rifles to be at the "Order." The bayonets will then be unfixed as taught in Ceremonial, Section 5 (iv).

**Brigade
will form
Close
Order.**

**Close Order—
March.**

Note.—
"Close the ranks"
in Army Procedure

The rear rank and supernumerary rank will step forward two paces.

Note.—If the Unit paraded is smaller than a Brigade, the order "Commence" will be given by the Officer Commanding the right flank Sub-Unit. All other orders will be given by the Commanding Officer of the Parade.

If the size and shape of the ground will not permit of the Unit forming in Line formation, it may be formed in any other convenient formation, as laid down in Ceremonial, Section 2; but in that case only the first two ranks of the Unit will fire, the rest of the Unit conforming to the motions of the rifle without firing. Also, at the order "Feu-de-Joie March" all ranks and supernumeraries in rear of the front rank of the Unit will step back two paces, and at the order "Close Order March" all the ranks and supernumeraries in rear of the front rank of the Unit will step forward two paces.

9. PLATOON MARCHING PAST.

The Platoon will be formed in "Line" on the line 1-4 flags, sized, proved, dressed and with bayonets fixed, as taught in Ceremonial, Sections 2 to 6. Ranks to be in "Close Order."

The Platoon Commander will order:—

Slope—Arms. Form The Platoon will step off and
—Fours. Right. will change direction by wheeling
By the Left. to the left round the first point
Quick—March. (i.e., the 1 flag), and will be led
Left—Wheel. by the guide towards the 2 flag.

Platoon—Halt. Into When the head of the platoon
Line, Left—Turn. arrives on the Saluting Base, the
Right—Dress. Platoon Commander will order
 it to "Halt," "Left turn," and
 "Right dress," when it will be dressed by the Right
 Section Leader, as taught in Ceremonial, Section 6.

By the right, } The Platoon will act as ordered.
Quick—March. }

Eyes—Right. On reaching "A" flag the Platoon
 Commander will give the order "Eyes
 Right," upon which all, except the Right Section Leader,
 will turn their head and eyes to the right looking the

Reviewing Officer in the face, and the Platoon Commander will salute in four paces, as taught in Sword Exercises.

Eyes—Front. When the Platoon reaches "B" flag the Platoon Commander will give the order "Eyes—Front," upon which all will turn their head and eyes to the front, and the Platoon Commander will "recover" his sword, make a pause of one pace, and then come to the "carry."

Notes.—(i) If the Platoon is required to resume its position on the original alignment, it will be moved there from the second or third point in any convenient formation.

(ii) When a Chief or Petty Officer is in command of a Platoon, he will, in marching past in column, take post 3 paces in *front of* the centre of the Platoon. He will not salute with the cutlass (which should remain sheathed), but he should turn his head and eyes to the right in the same manner as the rest of the Platoon.

10. COMPANY—GENERAL RULES.

A company may march past in:—

- (a) Column.
- (b) Close Column after marching past in column.
- (c) Close column.
- (d) As in (a), (b) or (c) above, but using double platoons.
- (e) Line.
- (f) Column of fours or column of route.

The company will be drawn up on the line 1-4 flags, sized, proved and dressed as taught in Ceremonial, Sections 2 to 6; bayonets will be fixed and arms at the "Slope," ranks to be in "Close-Order."

11. COMPANY MARCHING PAST IN COLUMN.

Close column will be formed on No. 1 platoon and the company dressed as taught in Ceremonial, Sec-

tion 6, platoons being closed to seven paces distance apart.

Company Commander will order :—

Move to the right in Fours,
Form—Fours.
Right.
By the Left,
Quick—March.

The company will act as ordered.

Change direction left,
Left—wheel.
For—ward. By the left.

On the command "Left Wheel," which will be given when the company reaches Number 1 flag, a wheel of a quarter of a circle to the left will be made, the company moving forward on the command "Forward" as soon as the wheel is completed.

Halt. Company will
Advance, Left—turn.
Right—dress.

On the command "Halt," which will be given when the company reaches the saluting base, the right section leaders will turn right and be covered from the rear by the Company Second-in-Command, who will give the command "**Guides—Steady.**" On the command "Steady," the right section leaders will turn about and the right-hand man of the front rank of each platoon will immediately correct his dressing by the section leader. On the command "Right—Dress," the platoons will be dressed separately as taught in Ceremonial, Section 6.

Notes.—(1) The right section leader of the leading platoon

should be one pace on the left of the 2 flag.

(2) At the order "Eyes—Front," all officers and gunner's mates, &c., are to take post for marching past. See Section 28.

March past in
column by the
right.

The Commander of No. 1 platoon will order "**No. 1 Platoon, by the right, quick—march,**" the remaining platoons following in succession at 40 paces distant or as ordered.

Notes.—(i) Company officers will salute with the sword on reaching the "A" flag.

(ii) The Company Commander, after he has saluted, will move out and place himself on the right of the reviewing officer and remain there until the company has passed, the Company Second-in-Command assuming command.

(iii) The platoon officers will salute with the sword, in conjunction with their platoons as taught in Ceremonial, Section 9 above.

(iv) The platoons will salute in succession as taught in Ceremonial, Section 9 above.

The Company Second-in-Command will order :—

At the Halt, Close
Column on No. 1
platoon.

This order will be given when the leading platoon has moved at least 40 paces beyond the 3 flag. The company will act as ordered.

Note.—If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the company will move there, after passing the 3 flag, in the most convenient and quickest formation.

12. COMPANY MARCHING PAST IN "CLOSE COLUMN" AFTER MARCHING PAST IN COLUMN.

The Company having marched past in Column as in Section 11, the Company Second-in-Command will order :—

At the Halt, Close Column on No. 1 platoon.

When at a suitable distance past No. 3 flag, close column will be formed. Right guides will be covered from the head of formation by the Company Second-in-Command as soon as the last platoon has halted. Company Gunner's Mate will step off the distances between platoons when the guides have been placed. The Company Second-in-Command will order "**Guides—Steady.**" Guides will turn about and take two paces forward.

About—Turn. The company will act as ordered, and the left-hand men of the new front ranks of platoons will align themselves on the right of their guides. Company Second-in-Command will assume his new position at the head of formation.

Order—Arms. The company will act as ordered.

Left—Dress. On the command "**Left—Dress,**" the platoons will be dressed separately as taught in Ceremonial, Section 6, but by the left instead of by the right.

Note.—At the order "**Eyes—Front,**" from the left section leaders, the left section leaders will turn right, take two paces forward and turn left and align themselves with the new rear ranks. The platoon officers will take post on the left of the new front ranks.

**Slope—Arms.
Advance in Close Column,
By the Left,
Quick—March.**

} The company will act as ordered.

Eyes—Left. This order is given by the Company Second-in-Command when he arrives at "B" flag. He will salute with the sword, the platoon commanders remaining at the "Carry" and looking to their front. The remainder of company acts as ordered.

Eyes—Front. This order is given by the company Second-in-Command when the rear of the company reaches "A" flag. The company act as ordered.

Notes.—(i) If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the company will be moved there from the 2 flag in the most convenient and quickest formation. As the company moves off the Saluting Base, the platoon commanders and section leaders resume their respective posts in "Close Column."

(ii) If the Company Commander does not remain with the reviewing officer for the above march past, he will take post in the company (as shown in Ceremonial, Section 28), after it has been turned about and dressed by orders of the Second-in-Command. The Company Commander will then resume command of the company, giving all the orders that are laid down to be given by the Company Second-in-Command. In this case the Company Commander *only* will salute with the sword, all other officers keeping their swords at the "Carry" throughout the march past.

13. COMPANY MARCHING PAST IN CLOSE COLUMN.

The company will be marched on to the saluting base and dressed as taught in Ceremonial, Section 11 above.

Note.—At the order "**Eyes—Front,**" from the right section leaders, the right section leaders will turn left, take two paces forward, turn right and align themselves with the rear ranks, the platoon commanders taking post on the right of the front ranks.

The Company Commander will order :—

**Company will
March Past in
Close Column
by the Right,
Quick—March.**

} The company will act as ordered.

Eyes—Right. This order is given by the Company Commander when he arrives at "A" flag. He will salute with the sword, the platoon commanders remaining at the "Carry" and looking to their front. The Company Commander, after he has saluted, will move out and place himself on the right of the reviewing officer and remain there until the whole company has passed, the Second-in-Command assuming command of the company.

The Company Second-in-Command will order :—

Eyes—Front. The company will act as ordered, the order being given as the rear platoon reaches "B" flag.

Note.—If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the company will be moved there from the 3 flag in the most convenient and quickest formation; as the company moves off the saluting base, the platoon officers and right section leaders will resume their respective posts in close column.

14. COMPANY MARCHING PAST IN "COLUMN," "CLOSE COLUMN AFTER MARCHING PAST IN COLUMN," OR IN "CLOSE COLUMN," USING DOUBLE PLATOONS.

As for Sections 11, 12 and 13, but using double platoons instead of single platoons, and the position of officers, &c., as in Section 28.

15. COMPANY MARCHING PAST IN "LINE."

The company will be formed in "line preparatory to marching past in line," as taught in Ceremonial, Section 2. It will then be moved to the right in a "Column of Fours," officers and supernumeraries retaining their original positions, wheeled through a quarter of a circle to the left round No. 1 flag, halted on reaching the saluting base, turned left and dressed, Company Commander giving the order :—

Right—Dress. The company will act in a similar manner to a single platoon as taught in Ceremonial, Section 6.

The Company Commander will then order :—

Company will March Past by the Right, Quick—March.

The company will act as ordered and march past in a similar manner to a single platoon as taught in Ceremonial, Section 9. The platoon commanders will salute with the sword, taking time from the Company Commander who will retain his position in the company throughout the march past.

16. COMPANY MARCHING PAST IN COLUMN OF FOURS OR IN COLUMN OF ROUTE.

Officers will draw and "Carry" swords, the Company Commander only will salute with the sword, and the Platoon Commanders will give the orders "**Eyes—Right**" and "**Eyes—Front**" to their platoons.

17. BATTALION—GENERAL RULES.

A Battalion may march past in :—

- (a) Column.
- (b) Close Column after marching past in column.
- (c) Close Column.
- (d) As in (a), (b) and (c) above, but using double platoons.
- (e) Column of "Companies in Line."
- (f) Close Column of "Companies in Line" after marching past in column of "Companies in Line."
- (g) Column of fours or column of route.

The Battalion will be formed on the line 1-4 flags, sized, proved, dressed as taught in Ceremonial, Sections 2 to 6. Bayonets will be fixed and ranks in "Close Order."

18. BATTALION MARCHING PAST IN COLUMN.

Mass will be formed, facing the saluting base, with "A" company on the right, and the Battalion dressed as taught in Ceremonial, Section 6, the platoons closing to 7 paces distance.

The Battalion Commander will order :—

<p>Battalion, move the right in fours, Form—Fours, Right. Quick—March.</p>	}	<p>The Battalion will act as ordered.</p>
---	---	---

Battalion, Mark—Time. On arrival of the leading company at Number 1 flag.

Battalion, in succession Change Direction—Left. The commander of the leading company will at once wheel his company through a quarter of a circle to the left and advance, halting his company when the leading section leaders are on the saluting base. The remaining companies will move forward in succession past Number 1 flag by order of their commanders and will be wheeled to the left, so as to form Battalion Close Column on the leading company. As each company is halted on the saluting base, all right guides of platoons will turn right and be covered by the Officer Instructor from the rear. Battalion C.G.M. will step off the distances between companies, and Company G.M.'s the distances between platoons. Chief G.M. and G.M.'s take post when this has been done. Officer Instructor will order "**Guides—Steady,**" when the guides have been placed. Guides will turn about. Company Commanders will then order "**Company will advance, left—turn.**" The companies will act as ordered, and the right hand men of the front ranks will align themselves on the left of their guides.

Battalion, Right—Dress. Section leaders of platoons will dress their platoons as taught in Ceremonial, Section 6.

Battalion, March Past in Column by the right. Companies will advance in column in succession, preserving 40 paces interval between companies. Each company will act as taught in Ceremonial, Section 11. Battalion officers will salute on arrival at

"A" flag. On arrival at "B" flag the Battalion Commander *only* will move to the saluting point and place himself on the right of the reviewing officer and remain there until the whole battalion has passed. The Battalion Second-in-Command will assume command of the battalion.

Battalion Second-in-Command will order :—

<p>Battalion, at the Halt—form close column.</p>	}	<p>When at suitable distance past No. 3 flag, close column will be formed.</p>
---	---	--

Note.—If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the battalion will be moved there, after passing the 3 flag, in the quickest and most convenient formation.

19. BATTALION MARCHING PAST IN CLOSE COLUMN AFTER MARCHING PAST IN COLUMN.

The battalion having marched past in column, the Battalion Second-in-Command will order :—

<p>Battalion, at the Halt, Form Close Column.</p>	<p>When at a suitable distance past No. 3 flag, close column will be formed. Right guides will be covered from the head of formation by the Second-in-Command or the Officer Instructor as soon as the last platoon to march past has halted. Battalion C.G.M. will step off distances between the companies from the head of formation and the Company G.M.'s will step off the distances between platoons. When the guides have been placed, the Officer Instructor will give the order "Guides—Steady." Guides will turn about and take two paces forward.</p>
--	--

This order will be given by the Second-in-Command as soon as the order "**Guides—Steady**" has been given. **Battalion, About—Turn. Order—Arms.** The battalion will act as ordered. The left hand men of the front ranks of platoons will align themselves on the right of their guides. Officers and supernumeraries take up their new positions.

**Battalion,
Left—Dress.**
Section 12.

**Battalion,
Slope—Arms.** } As ordered.

Battalion Second-in-Command will order :—

**Battalion, Advance
in Close Column.
By the Left,
Quick—March.**

The battalion will advance. The Battalion Second - in - Command *only* will salute with the sword on arriving at "B" Flag. Other Officers keep their swords at the carry. Company Commanders will order "Eyes Left" in succession on arriving at "B" Flag, and "Eyes Front" when the last Platoon of their Company has passed "A" Flag. All heads and eyes are to be turned to the left except those of Platoon Commanders.

Notes.—(i) If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the battalion will be marched there, after passing the 2 flag, in the quickest and most convenient formation. As the battalion moves off the saluting base, Officers and Section Leaders will resume their original positions in close column.

(ii) If the Battalion Commander does not remain with the reviewing officer for the above march past, he will take post in the Battalion (as shown in Ceremonial, Section 28), after it has been turned about and dressed by order of the Battalion Second-in-Command. The Battalion Commander will then resume command of the battalion, giving all orders that are laid down for the Battalion Second-in-Command to give. In this case, the Battalion Commander *only* will salute with the sword, all other officers keeping their swords at the "Carry" throughout the March Past.

20. BATTALION MARCHING PAST IN CLOSE COLUMN.

The Battalion will be formed on the saluting base as in Section 18. It will then march past in a similar

manner to a company as taught in Section 13, the Battalion Commander *only* moving out to the saluting point, &c., after saluting and reaching "A" flag. The interval between companies to be 12 paces or as requisite.

21. BATTALION MARCHING PAST IN "COLUMN OF COMPANIES IN LINE."

The battalion will previously be formed in "Line," or "Close column of companies in line," on the line 1-4 flags.

The Battalion Commander will order :—

**At the Halt, on the
Right, form Close
Column of
Companies in Line;
Remainder, Form—
Fours. Right.
Quick—March.**

(*Note.*—This is only necessary if the battalion is in line formation.)

placed, the companies will be dressed independently as taught in Ceremonial, Section 6.

**Move to the Right
in Fours, Form
Fours. Right.
By the Left,
Quick—March.**

} As ordered.

**Change direction
Left, Left—
Wheel. For—ward.**

On the command "Left Wheel," which will be given when the battalion reaches the No. "1" flag, the battalion will wheel through a quarter of a circle to the left, the whole acting in a similar manner to a company moving to a flank in fours, and changing direction. The Battalion C.G.M.

and Battalion 2nd in Command will carry out duties similar to the Company G.M. and Company 2nd in Command. The Battalion Warrant Officer and Officer Instructor will assist from the rear, the Battalion Warrant Officer being in rear of "D" Company and the Officer Instructor in rear of "A" Company. The command "forward" will be given when the wheel is completed and the battalion will be marched on to the Saluting Base.

Note.—If, owing to the size of the ground, it is impracticable to carry out a wheel as above on reaching No. "1" Flag, Battalion Commander will order "**Change Direction Left**" and each Company should then act independently and wheel in Column of Fours, outer companies moving at the "Double" to retain their relative positions with regard to the inner company.

Battalion—Halt. This order will be given by the Battalion Commander as battalion reaches the saluting base. The right guides will turn right and be covered from the rear by the Officer Instructor. Battalion C.G.M. will step off the distances between companies. As soon as the guides are placed and covered, the Officer Instructor will order "**Guides—Steady**"; right guides will turn about.

Battalion, The battalion will act in a similar manner to a company formed in close
Left—Turn. column on the saluting base, each
Right—Dress. company acting as a platoon.

Battalion, March Each company will advance in
Past in Column of succession from the front, acting
Companies in Line. as taught in Ceremonial, Section 15.
A distance of 40 paces to be
preserved between companies.

Note.—The Battalion Commander *only* will move out to the saluting point, &c., after he has saluted on passing "A" flag.

Battalion Second-in-Command will order:—

Battalion, at the Close column of companies in line
Halt, form Close will be ordered as soon as the
Column of leading company has moved a
Companies in Line. sufficient distance past the 3 flag.

Note.—If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the battalion will be moved there in the quickest and most convenient formation after passing the 3 flag.

22. BATTALION MARCHING PAST IN "CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES IN LINE" AFTER MARCHING PAST IN "COLUMN OF COMPANIES IN LINE."

The battalion having marched past in "Column of Companies in line," the Battalion Second-in-Command will order:—

Battalion, at the When a suitable distance past
Halt, form Close 3 flag, "Close column of com-
Column of panies in line" will be formed.
Companies in Line. Right guides will be covered from the head of formation by the Officer Instructor or Second-in-Command as soon as the last company has halted. The Battalion C.G.M. will step off the distances between companies (12 paces). When the guides have been placed, the Officer Instructor will order "**Guides—Steady.**" Guides will turn about and take two paces forward.

This order will be given by the Second-in-Command as soon as the order
Battalion,
About—Turn. "Guides—Steady" has been given. The battalion will act as ordered. The left hand men of the front rank of companies will align themselves on the right of their guides. Officers and supernumeraries take up their new positions.

Battalion,
Order—Arms. } As ordered.

Battalion, Left—Dress. The battalion will act as ordered, the dressing being carried out by the companies separately, each company acting in a similar manner to a single platoon, as taught in Ceremonial, Section 8, but by the left instead of the right. At the order "**Eyes—Front**" from the left section leaders the left section leaders will turn right, take two paces forward, turn left and align themselves with the new rear ranks. The Company Commanders will align themselves on the left of the front ranks of their companies.

Battalion, Slope—Arms. } As ordered.

Battalion, Advance in Close Column of Companies in Line, By the Left, Quick—March, Eyes—Left.

The battalion will advance. The Battalion Second-in-Command *only* will salute with the sword. At the order "**Eyes Left**" from the Second-in-Command on arrival at "**B**" flag, all heads and eyes will be turned to the left except the Company Commanders.

Officer Instructor will order :—

Eyes—Front. As soon as the last company has passed "**A**" flag.

Note.—If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the battalion will be moved there, after passing the 2 flag, in the quickest and most convenient formation. As the battalion moves off the saluting base, Officers and section leaders will resume their original positions in "Close column of companies in line."

23. BATTALION MARCHING PAST IN "COLUMN OF FOURS" OR "COLUMN OF ROUTE."

The Battalion Commander *only* will salute with the sword. The platoon commanders will give the orders "**Eyes—Right (or Left)**" and "**Eyes—Front**" to

their platoons respectively, swords remaining at the "Carry."

24. BRIGADE—GENERAL RULES.

The brigade may be required to march past by battalions, the battalions being in any of the formations as laid down in Ceremonial, Section 17, *et seq.*

The following procedures are for a brigade marching past :—

- (a) Battalions in column of companies in line.
- (b) Battalions in "Close column of companies in line" after marching past as in (a) above.

Similar procedure may be adopted for any of the other formations, each battalion acting as taught in Section 17, *et seq.*

25. BRIGADE MARCHING PAST BY BATTALIONS IN "COLUMN OF COMPANIES IN LINE."

If battalions are in "Line" formation, they will first of all be formed into Close Column of Companies in Line as taught in Ceremonial, Section 21.

Brigade Orders.	Battalion Orders.	Procedure and Remarks.
The Brigade will march past.	Slope—Arms. The battalion will move to the right in fours, Form—fours. Right.	The battalions will act as ordered.
Signal to move.		Given when the battalions have turned right.
<i>Note.</i> —Battalion Commanders will not move their battalions until they see that their front is clear.		
	Battalion, Quick—march. By the left.	The battalion will act as ordered.

*Brigade
Orders.**Battalion
Orders.**Procedure and Remark*

**Change direction left,
Left—Wheel.
For—ward.** Given as each battalion passes No. 1 flag. Battalions wheel, moving forward directly they have wheeled through a quarter of a circle, the wheel to be carried out as taught in Ceremonial, Section 21.

**Halt,
Left—turn.
Right—Dress.**

Given when the head of each battalion reaches the saluting base. The succeeding battalions will move, by order of their commanders, into position in rear of the leading battalion. The distances between battalions to be ordered by the Brigade Commander depending on the size of the ground.

Signal to move.

**Battalion,
advance in
column of
Companies in
Line.**

Each battalion will be advanced in succession from the front and will act as taught in Ceremonial, Section 21. The Brigade Commander preceded by his staff and the leading Battalion Commander and Second-in-command will step off with "A" company. The Brigade Commander salutes with the sword, and after saluting goes out to the saluting point, accompanied by one of his staff, and will place himself on the right of the reviewing officer until the whole of the brigade has passed. No other officers move out to the saluting point. The brigade staff salute with the hand.

*Brigade
Orders.**Battalion
Orders.**Procedure and Remarks.*

**At the Halt,
Close Column of
Companies in
Line.**

Given after the battalion has passed No. 3 flag. The leading battalion must leave room for the battalions in rear to halt in "Close Column of Companies in Line" between the leading battalion and the line 3-4 flags.

Note.—If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the brigade will be moved there by battalions acting independently in the quickest and most convenient formation after they have passed the 3 flag.

26. BRIGADE MARCHING PAST BY BATTALIONS IN "CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES IN LINE" AFTER MARCHING PAST BY BATTALIONS IN "COLUMN OF COMPANIES IN LINE."

*Brigade
Orders.**Battalion
Orders.**Procedure and Remarks.*

**At the Halt,
Form close
column of
companies in
line.
About—turn.
Left—Dress.
Order—arms.
Stand at—ease.
Stand—Easy.
(If permitted
by Brigade
Commander).**

Given after the battalion has passed No. 3 flag. The leading battalion must leave room for the battalions in rear to halt in "Close column of companies in line" between the leading battalion and the line 3-4 flags. Each battalion will act as ordered and as taught in Ceremonial, Section 22.

<i>Brigade Orders.</i>	<i>Battalion Orders.</i>	<i>Procedure and Remarks.</i>
The brigade will march past by battalions in close column of companies in line.	Battalion, Atten—tion. Slope—Arms. Battalion will advance in close column of companies in line. By the left, Quick—March.	Brigade order is given when all the battalions have halted and turned about, etc., as above. Each Battalion will then march past as taught in Ceremonial, Section 22. The Brigade Commander should be 40 paces in front of the leading battalion and he should salute with the sword. The Battalion Commanders should salute with the sword and the remaining officers should keep their swords at the "Carry." Battalions should be 40 paces apart unless otherwise ordered.

Note.—If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the brigade will be moved there by battalions acting independently in the quickest and most convenient formation after they have passed the 3 flag. As the battalions move off the saluting base, the officers and section leaders resume their original positions in "Close column of companies in line."

27. "ADVANCING IN REVIEW ORDER."

The following procedure is that for a brigade, any other sized unit should conform to similar procedure:—

Note.—If the unit formed is

(a) A brigade (or larger unit) in line of "Battalions in line," or

(b) A unit smaller than a brigade and in Line formation,

then officers should not take post in review order but should retain their positions as shown in Ceremonial, Section 28 (when formed for inspection).

The brigade having been formed on the line 1-4 flags, the following will be carried out:—

<i>Brigade Orders.</i>	<i>Battalion Orders.</i>	<i>Procedure and Remarks.</i>
Atten—tion. Officers will take post in Review Order.	Officers, Take—Post. Quick—March.	As detailed in Ceremonial, Section 8.
The brigade will come to the slope, Slope—Arms.	Repeat Brigade Caution.	The brigade will act as ordered.
The brigade will advance in Review Order, Quick—March.	—	The brigade will advance. A battalion of direction will be named by the Brigade Commander, the remaining battalions will march by their inner flanks. The whole will advance, the band playing until they arrive at a convenient distance from the reviewing officer.
Halt.	—	As ordered.
The brigade will come to the Present, General (or Royal) Salute,	Repeat Brigade Caution.	As ordered.
Present—Arms.	—	The band will play

<i>Brigade Orders.</i>	<i>Battalion Orders.</i>	<i>Procedure and Remarks.</i>
The brigade will come to the slope, Slope—Arms.	Repeat Brigade Caution.	As ordered.
The brigade will come to the Order, Order—Arms.	Repeat Brigade Caution.	As ordered. The reviewing officer will either address the brigade or give the order to dismiss the parade when Battalion Commanders will be told to take command of their battalions, unfix bayonets and return to their ships.

28. POSITIONS OF OFFICERS AND GUNNER'S MATES, &c., IN THE VARIOUS FORMATIONS.

Platoon formed for Inspection.

Platoon Commander—Two paces in front of centre.
Platoon Petty Officer—Two paces in rear of centre.

Section Leaders—As taught in Ceremonial, Section 1.

Ranks at four paces distance.

♂ Platoon Commander.

⚡ Platoon Petty Officer.

⊠ Outer Section Leaders.

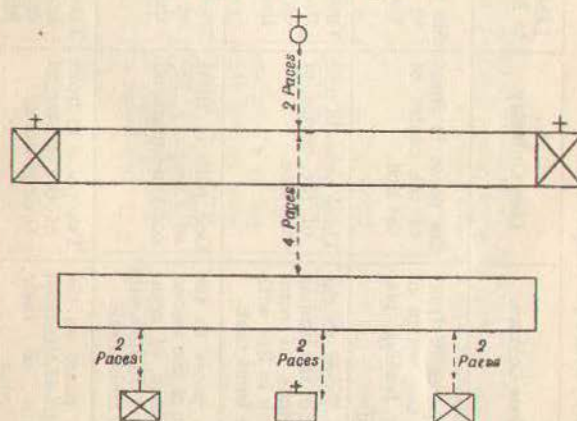
⊞ Section Leaders of Petty Officer rate, who are not Outer Section Leaders. If there is only one,

he should be posted on the non-directing flank-side of the Platoon Petty Officer.

Platoon Marching Past.

As above, ranks at two paces distance.

Platoon formed for Inspection.



Company formed for Inspection.

	Column.	Close Column.	Line Ordinary.	Line preparatory to Marching Past in Line.
Company Commander.	Six paces in front of the centre of the leading platoon.	Six paces in front of the centre of the leading platoon.	Six paces in front of the centre of the line.	Six paces in front of the centre of the line.
Company Second-in-Command.	Two paces to the left of the leading platoon of company in line with the front rank.	Two paces to the left of the leading platoon of company in line with the front rank.	Three paces in rear of the centre of the line.	Three paces in front of the centre of the line.
Company Gunner's Mate.	Two paces to the left of the second platoon of company in line with the front rank.	Two paces to the left of the second platoon of company in line with the front rank.	One pace in front of Company Second-in-Command.	Four paces in rear of the centre of the line.
Platoon Commanders.	Two paces in front of the centre of their platoons.	Two paces on the right of the front rank of their platoons.	Two paces in front of the centre of their platoons.	Three paces in front of the centre of their platoons.

302

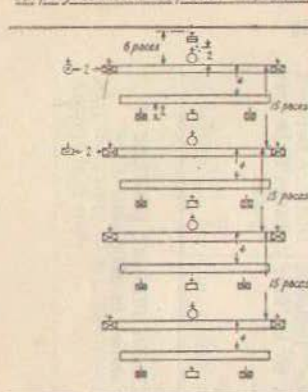
	Column.	Close Column.	Line Ordinary.	Line preparatory to Marching Past in Line.
Platoon P.O. and Section Leaders.	P.O. two paces in rear of centre of platoon. Section leaders as in Ceremonial, Section 1.	P.O. two paces in rear of centre of platoon.	P.O. two paces in rear of centre of platoon. Section leaders as in Ceremonial Section 1, each platoon acting as a separate unit.	P.O. two paces in rear of centre of platoon. Section leaders as in Ceremonial, Section 1, the whole company acting as one unit.
Ranks. &c.	Distance between platoons to be 15 paces. Distance between ranks to be four paces.	Distance between platoons to be 7 paces. Distance between ranks to be two paces.	Distance between ranks to be four paces.	Distance between ranks to be four paces.

303

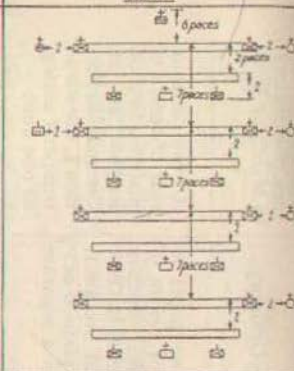
Notes.—(1) There is *no* Officer Instructor with a Company.

(2) Column and Close Column formations using *Double Platoons*, positions of Officers, &c., in each Double Platoon are as shown in diagram.

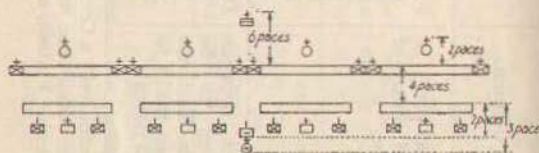
Company formed for inspection in Column.



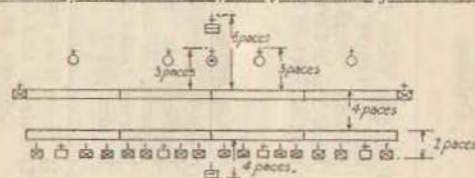
Company formed for inspection in Close Column.



Company formed for inspection in Line Ordinary.



Company formed for inspection in Line Preparatory to Marching Past in Line.

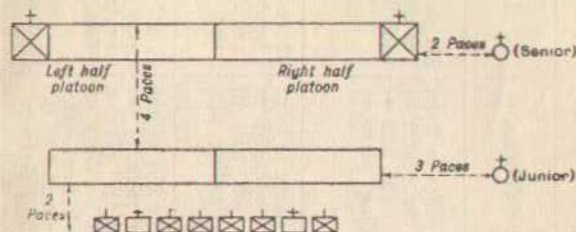


- KEY -

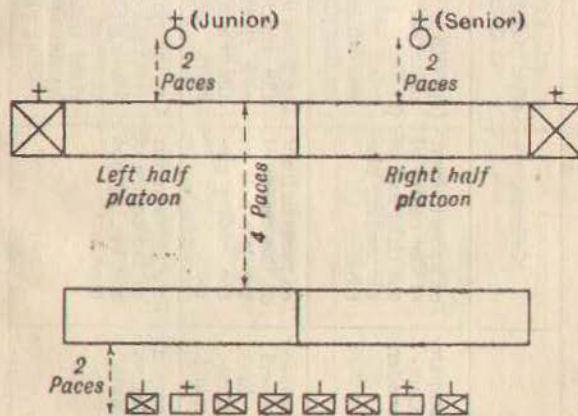
- ⊠ Company Commander
- ⊠ Company 2nd in Command
- ⊠ Company Gunner's Mate
- ⊠ Platoon Commander

- ⊠ Platoon Petty Officer
- ⊠ Outer Section Leaders of Company
- ⊠ Remaining Section Leaders of R.O. Rate

A Double Platoon formed for inspection in Company Close Column.



A Double Platoon formed for inspection in Company Column.



Company Marching Past.

	Column.	Close Column after Marching Past in Column.	Close Column.	Line.
Company Com- mander.	Ten paces in front of the centre of the right half of the leading pla- toon.	(1) With reviewing officer, or (2) Ten paces in front of centre of new left half of new leading platoon.	Ten paces in front of the centre of the right half of leading platoon.	Six paces in front of the centre of the line.
Company Second in Com- mand.	Ten paces in front of the centre of the left half of the leading pla- toon.	Ten paces in front of the centre of the new right half of the new leading pla- toon.	Ten paces in front of the centre of the left half of the leading pla- toon.	Three paces in front of the centre of the line.
Company Gunner's Mate.	Four paces in rear of the centre of the leading pla- toon.	On the right of the rear rank of the new leading platoon and covering off the right outer section leader of the new leading platoon.	On the left of the rear rank of the leading platoon and covering off the left outer sec- tion leader of the leading platoon.	Four paces in rear of the centre of the line.

306

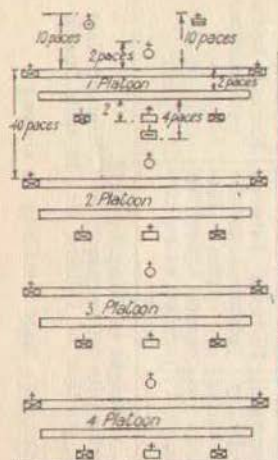
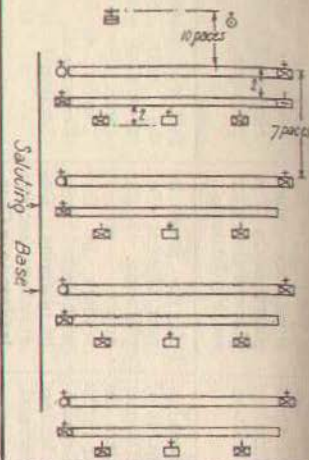
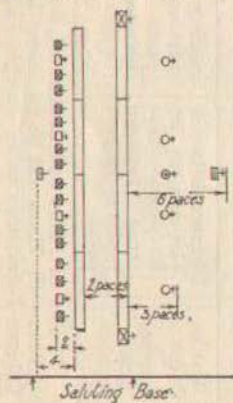
Platoon Com- manders.	Two paces in front of the centre of their platoons.	On the left of the front rank of their platoons in the place of the outer section leaders.	On the right of the front rank of their platoons in the place of the outer section leaders.	Three paces in front of the centre of their platoons.
Platoon P.O. and Section Leaders.	P.O. two paces in rear of centre of platoons. Section Leaders as in Ceremonial, Sec- tion 1.	P.O. two paces in rear of centre of platoons. Left outer section leaders in line with rear ranks of platoon. Remain- ing section leaders as in Ceremonial, Section 1.	P.O. two paces in rear of centre of platoons. Right outer section leaders in line with rear ranks of platoons. Re- maining section leaders as in Cere- monial, Section 1.	P.O. two paces in rear of centre of pla- toons. Section Leaders as in Ceremonial, Section 1.
Ranks, &c.	Distance between platoons to be 40 paces. Dis- tance between ranks to be two paces.	Distance between platoons to be 7 paces. Distances between ranks to be two paces.	Distance between platoons to be 7 paces. Dis- tance between ranks to be two paces.	Ranks to be two paces distance.

307

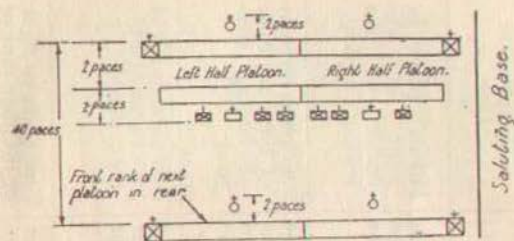
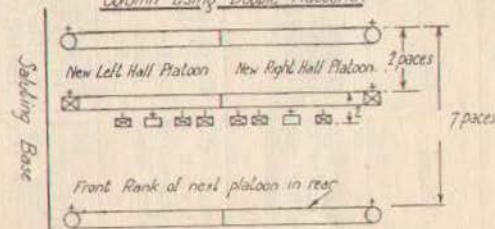
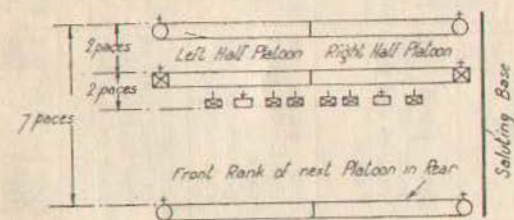
Column of Fours and Column of Route—As taught in Company Drill.

Notes.—(i) There will be no Officer Instructor with a Company. (ii) Column or Close Column Formations using Double Platoons, position of Officers, &c., in each Double Platoon as shown in diagram.

(The positions of Company Officers and Gunner's Mate remaining as above.)

Company Marching Past in Column.Company Marching Past in Close Column after Marching Past in Column.Company Marching Past in Line.Company Marching Past in Close Column.

- KEY**
- — Company Commander
 - — Company 2nd in Command.
 - — Company Gunners' Mate
 - — Platoon Commander
 - — Platoon Petty Officer
 - — Outer Section Leaders of Company
 - — Remaining Section Leaders of P.O. Role.

Company Marching Past in Column using Double Platoons.Company Marching Past in Close Column after Marching Past in Column using Double Platoons.Company Marching Past in Close Column using Double Platoons.

Note: In the above three diagrams the position of Company Officers and Gunners' Mates are not shown as they remain the same as for an Ordinary Company.

- KEY**
- — Platoon Commander
 - — Platoon Petty Officer
 - — Outer Section Leaders of Company
 - — Remaining Section Leaders of P.O. Role.

A Battalion formed for Inspection.

	Mass.	Close Column.	Line.	Close Column of Companies in Line.
Battalion Commander.	Ten paces in front of front rank of the Battalion.	Ten paces in front of the centre of the leading platoon of the leading company.	Fifteen paces in front of the centre of the line.	Fifteen paces in front of the centre of the leading company.
Battalion Second in Command.	Four paces on right of front rank of leading platoon of the right company.	Four paces on right of front rank of leading platoon of the leading company.	Six paces in front of the right outer section leader of the right company.	Four paces on right of the front rank of leading company.
Battalion Warrant Officer.	Four paces on left of front rank of the leading platoon of the left company.	Four paces on left of front rank of the leading platoon of the left company.	Six paces in front of the left outer section leader of the left company.	Four paces on left of front rank of leading company.
Battalion Chief	Four paces on the right of the	Four paces on the right of the front	Four paces in the rear of the centre	Four paces on right of the front rank of

310

Gunner's Mate.	front rank of the 3rd platoon of the right company.	rank of the 3rd platoon of the leading company.	of the line.	3rd company from the front.
Company Officers, Gunner's Mates, &c.	As for Company in Close Column formed for inspection.	As for Company in Close Column formed for inspection.	As for companies in line preparatory to marching past, in line.	Company Commanders, two paces from the Guide on the directing flank of their companies. The remaining Officers of Companies, as for a company in line fallen in preparatory to marching past in line.
Ranks, &c.	Distance apart of companies to be 5 paces, remaining distances as for company close column.	Distance apart of companies to be 12 paces, remaining distances as for company close column.	Distance between companies to be 5 paces. Distance between ranks of companies to be four paces.	Distance between companies to be 12 paces. Distance between ranks to be four paces.

311

Officer Instructor.—Ten paces in rear of the centre of the rear rank of formation of the Battalion.

Notes.—(i) When a Battalion, acting independently, receives a reviewing officer in a formation other than "Line," Officers will be ordered to take post in Review order prior to the arrival of the reviewing officer. They will take post in the Battalion again *prior* to the inspection and they will then occupy the positions given above—*Vide* Ceremonial, Section 7.

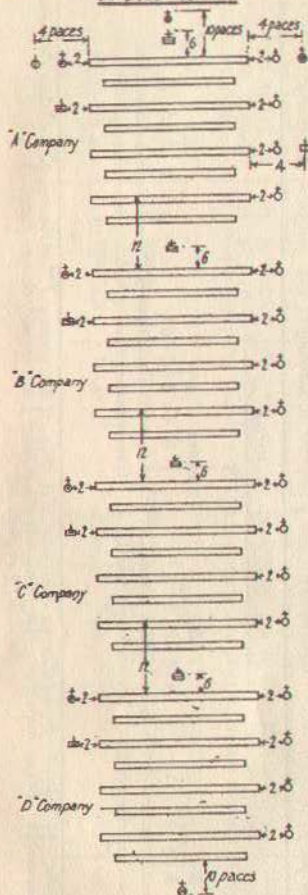
(ii) If the Battalion forms part of a Brigade or larger unit which is not in line formation, the positions of officers given above do not apply. Officers will march on to the Review ground in their ordinary battalion positions and will then take post in Review Order. When ordered to take post in their battalions *after* the inspection they will resume their ordinary battalion positions.

(iii) For Mass or Close Column formations with Company using Double Platoons, positions of Officers, &c., as given under "Company." Battalion Chief Gunner's Mate will align himself four paces clear on the right of the front rank of the rear Double platoon of the

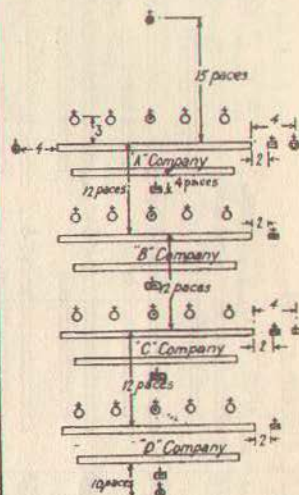
(1) Right Company when in Mass Formation.
and (2) Leading Company when in Close Column formation.

(iv) When the King's Colour is paraded, the distance apart of Nos. 2 and 3 companies of the Battalion when in "Mass" or "Line" formation, is to be increased to 15 paces. This allows five paces for the Colour Party and five paces clear on each side of Colour Party. The Colour Party is to be posted as in Ceremonial, Section 30.

Battalion formed for Inspection in Close Column.



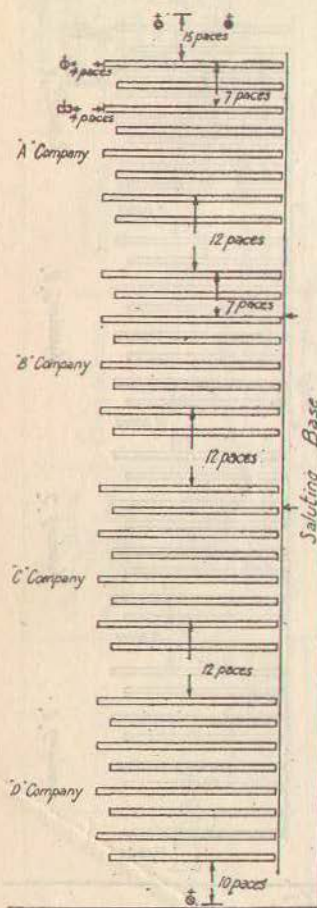
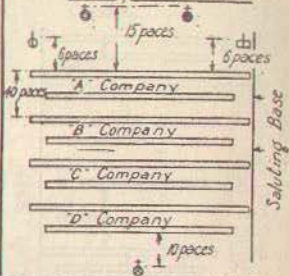
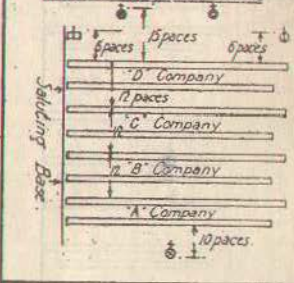
Battalion formed for Inspection in Close Column of Companies in Line.



See Note (i) on page 312.

— KEY —

♂	Battalion Commander	♂	Battalion C.G. Mate
♂	Battalion 2nd in Command	♂	Company Commander
♂	Battalion Warrant Officer	♂	Company 2nd in Command
♂	Officer-Instructor	♂	Company Gunner's Mate
♂		♂	Platoon Commander

Battalion Marching Past in Close Column.Battalion Marching Past in Column of Companies in LineBattalion Marching Past in Close Column of Companies in Line after Marching Past in Column of Companies in LineNote—

Company Officers, etc., have not been shown as they are the same as for Company Marching Past, with the exception that when Marching Past in Close Column of Companies in Line after Marching Past in Column of Companies in Line the Coy. Commanders take post on the Left Flank of the new front ranks of Companies and the left Flank Guides drop back and align themselves with the Left Flank of the new rear ranks of Companies when marching past in Battalion Close Column or Battalion Close Column after Marching Past in Column. Company Commanders and Company Seconds in Command are to take post six paces in front of their respective Companies.

KEY

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ● Battalion Commander | ● Battalion Warrant Officer |
| ● Battalion 2nd in Command | ● Officer Instructor |
| ⊞ Battalion C.G. Mate | |

THE KING'S COLOUR.**29. GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS.**

His Majesty the King has graciously approved the use by The Royal Navy of Colours, which are known as "The King's Colour."

The King's Colour is a White Ensign of silk with a Crown and Royal Cypher super-imposed, and with blue and gold cord and tassels.

The King's Colour is carried on an ash staff surmounted by a gilt badge consisting of an Admiralty pattern anchor on a three-faced shield, with Crown super-imposed.

A King's Colour is held in each of the following commands:—

- One in each Home Port, kept at the Royal Naval Barracks.
- Atlantic Fleet.
Mediterranean Station.
East Indies Station.
Africa Station.
North America and West Indies Station.

The King's Colour is to be paraded on shore only on the following occasions, namely:—

- By a Guard of Honour, mounted for H.M. The King, H.M. The Queen, or for a member of the Royal Family.
- By a Guard of Honour, mounted for a Foreign Sovereign or the President of a Republican State.
- On such important ceremonial occasions as may from time to time be ordered by the Admiralty, or at Malta and Gibraltar by the Naval Commander-in-Chief, Mediterranean, or in the Dominions and India on occasions of important ceremonial when the Viceroy, or the Governor-General is present, as may be directed by the local Naval Commander-in-Chief.

The King's Colour is not to be paraded on occasions other than those detailed above.

In no circumstances is the King's Colour to be paraded on board ship or on foreign territory.

The King's Colour is to be carried by a Sub-Lieutenant or Lieutenant in a Colour Belt hung over the left shoulder. The Colour party will consist of one Chief Petty Officer and two Petty Officers (in Seamen's dress) or Leading Seamen.

The Colour Officer will wear a sword. The Chief Petty Officer will be armed with a drawn cutlass and will conform to the motions of the rifles of the Colour party. The two Petty Officers (or Leading Seamen) will carry rifles with bayonets fixed.

When uncased the King's Colour will at all times be saluted with the highest honours.

The King's Colour will usually be carried uncased and unfurled, but in wet weather it may be carried furled and cased.

The positions for the King's Colour are as follows:—

The Order.—The Colour Staff and the King's Colour held with the right hand at that part of the staff where the lowest corner of the King's Colour reaches, the staff perpendicular, the bottom of the staff resting on the ground in line with and against the right toe, the right elbow close to the body.

Note.—The King's Colour should not be stretched taut down the staff, but allowed to hang naturally.

The Stand-at-Ease.—As for the "Order," but the left foot carried off to the left, the left hand remaining at the side.

The Carry.—A perpendicular position, supported in the socket of the colour belt, the staff and King's Colour held as for the "Order," the right hand in line with the mouth, back of the hand to the front, the elbow close to the body. The King's Colour to be held perpendicularly.

The Slope.—At an angle of 45° resting on the right shoulder, the right elbow close into the side and the forearm parallel with the ground. The King's Colour should hang over and cover the right shoulder and arm.

To Let Fly the King's Colour.—Release the King's Colour with the right hand and seize the staff again immediately.

Note.—The King's Colour is let fly only when dipping.

To "Catch" the King's Colour.—Seize the Colour with the right hand and resume the position of the "Carry."

Note.—The left hand may be used to assist in gathering in the King's Colour in a high wind.

To Dip the King's Colour at the Halt.—At the caution "Royal Salute," the King's Colour is let fly. At the order "Present—Arms," the staff is raised just clear of the socket of the colour belt, and the King's Colour is dipped in the time of three motions of the rifle. The King's Colour is carried out to the right and lowered with a sweeping motion to a position in front of and in line with the right toe, the head of the staff just clear of the ground, the King's Colour being spread on the ground and to the right of the staff. The staff is held under the right arm-pit, the back of the hand towards the ground, the right elbow close to the body.

Note 1.—Care must be taken to look straight to the front when dipping the King's Colour and not to follow it with the eyes.

Note 2.—If the ground is muddy the King's Colour is held in the hand to prevent it becoming soiled.

To Dip the King's Colour on the March.—At the caution "Eyes," the King's Colour is let fly. At the order "Right," the motions are performed as detailed above, except that the staff is held horizontally in front of the body and resting underneath the fore-arm.

To "Carry" the King's Colour from the "Dip."

Raise the King's Colour to the position of the carry with the right hand and then gather in the King's Colour.

On all ceremonial parades the following rules as to the carrying of the King's Colour will be observed:—

When at the Halt, the King's Colour will never be sloped; it will be at the "Carry" or the "Order" according to whether arms are at the "Slope" or the "Order," but on the Review Ground when arms are at the "Order" the King's Colour will be at the "Carry."

When on the march the King's Colour will always be carried at the "Slope" except when on the Review Ground, when it will be at the "Carry."

The King's Colour is only to be dipped when a Royal Salute is given or during a March Past when the Reviewing Officer is H.M. the King, H.M. the Queen, a member of the Royal Family, a Foreign Sovereign, a President of a Republican State, the Viceroy of India, the Governor-General of the Dominion of Canada, the Governor-General of the Commonwealth of Australia, the Governor-General of the Dominion of New Zealand, the Governor-General of the Union of South Africa, or the Governor-General of the Irish Free State.

30. POSITION OF THE KING'S COLOUR.

The position of the King's Colour at Reviews and Inspections and when marching past is as follows:—

Reviews and Inspections.—In line and mass formations the King's Colour will be placed between the two centre companies, in the latter case in line with the front ranks of the leading platoons. In column and close column formations, the King's Colour will be in rear of the centre of the second company (or battalion). When Officers take post in Review Order, the Colour Officer and the two Petty Officers (or Leading Seamen) of the Colour Party take post in the centre of the Officers' line. The Chief Petty Officer will be two paces in rear of the Colour Officer.

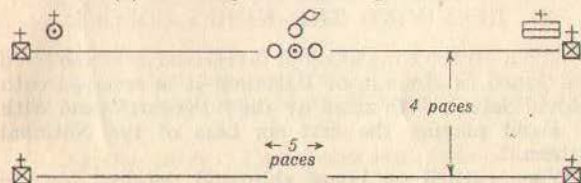
Marching Past.—When proceeding from the line 1-4 flags on to the Saluting Base, the Colour Party will

move in conjunction with the Escort Company which will always move at the "Quick." On arrival at the Saluting Base, the Colour Party will take post seven paces in rear of the Escort Company and will march past in this position. They will Eyes Right and Dip the King's Colour (if applicable) at the order of the Commander of the Escort Company, or in Column at the order of the Platoon commander immediately in front of them.

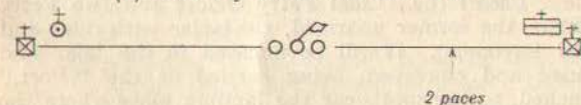
If the Guard of Honour parades the King's Colour it will be told off in two Divisions and the posts of the Officers and the Colour Party will be as shown in the following diagrams in which the following additional symbols are used:—

○ Colour Officer. ⊙ C.P.O. } of Colour
○ P.O. or L.S. } Party.

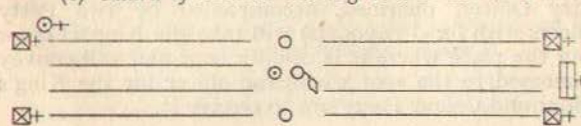
(a) Guard of Honour at open order.



(b) Guard of Honour in close order.



(c) Guard of Honour moving to a Flank in Fours.



When on the march, the Colour Party will always move so as to preserve the formation shown below; therefore, before moving off, the officer in charge of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) must allow sufficient time between the order "Right (or Left)," and the order "Quick—March" for the Colour Party to wheel into this formation by order of the Colour Officer. Again when turning into line from column of fours a similar pause must be made.



31. RECEIVING THE KING'S COLOUR.

Whenever the King's Colour is received or surrendered by a Guard of Honour or Battalion it is received with a Royal Salute, with arms at the "Present" and with the Band playing the first six bars of the National Anthem.

When carried on board ship and required for use ashore, the King's Colour (cased) will be taken ashore by a Colour Escort (i.e., Chief Petty Officer and two Petty Officers, the former unarmed, the latter with rifles and fixed bayonets). It will be uncased in the boat and landed and conveyed, being carried at the "Port," bunched, to the spot near the landing place where the officer for the King's Colour and Colour Party are to receive it.

In shore establishments a Colour Escort (i.e., a Chief Petty Officer, unarmed, accompanied by two Petty Officers with fixed bayonets) will take the King's Colour from the place where it is usually kept and will convey it uncased to the spot where the officer for the King's Colour and Colour Party are to receive it.

In both of the above cases further procedure is as follows:—

The Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) is halted opposite the spot where the King's Colour is to be received, being given the following orders:—

"Guard of Honour (or Escort Company)."	Halt.
	Into line, Left (or Right) —Turn.
	Open order—March.
Divisions (or Half Companies).	Five paces outwards —March.
Guard of Honour (or Escort Company).	Order—Arms. Right—Dress."

At the order "Halt," the Colour Party, who have been marching in rear of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company), will halt, but will not conform to any further movements except as detailed below.

The Colour Officer will have his sword drawn, and sheath hooked to sword belt, where it is to remain throughout and the Colour Party will have bayonets fixed.

At the order "Five paces outwards—March," the Colour Officer will move the Colour Party to a position 12 paces in front of the centre of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company). He will then order the Colour Party to order arms.

At the order "Eyes—Front" from the right section leader of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company), the Colour Escort (i.e., the Chief Petty Officer and Petty Officers who have brought out the King's Colour) will advance and halt four paces in front of and facing the Colour Party.

The Commander of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) will now order "Slope—Arms."

This is the cue for the Colour Officer to receive the King's Colour, the procedure for which is as follows:—

The Colour Officer orders

**"Colour Party. Slope—Arms.
Present—Arms.
Slope—Arms."**

He then "returns" his sword, goes forward, salutes the King's Colour by hand and receives it into his Colour belt.

The Chief Petty Officer salutes as he hands over the King's Colour and orders **"Colour Escort, Present—Arms."**

The Colour Officer then turns about and resumes his position with the Colour Party.

This is the cue for the Commander of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) to order **"Royal Salute, Present—Arms."** The Colour Party will conform and the Band will play six bars of the National Anthem. (If no band is available, bugles will sound the General Salute.)

As soon as the band or bugles have finished playing, the Colour Officer will order the Colour Party to slope arms.

The Commander of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) will then order **"March in the King's Colour."**

On this order the Colour Officer orders the Colour Party to turn about, march in, halt, and turn about.

Note.—The Colour Officer will order "Halt" so that he will halt 3 paces in front of the front rank. The C.P.O. will take 2 paces and the petty officers (or leading seamen) 4 paces, after the order "Halt."

As soon as the Colour Party are halted in line and turned about, they also will come to the "Present" by order of the Colour Officer (and from then will conform to the movements of the Guard of Honour or Escort Company).

The Commander of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) will now order **"Slope—Arms"** (the Colour Escort will conform) and then **"Close Order—March, Move to the Right (or Left) in Fours, Form—Fours, Right (or Left),"** and after sufficient pause to allow the Colour Party to wheel, **"Quick—March."**

At the order **"Quick—March,"** the Chief Petty Officer will order the Colour Escort to Present Arms and then to Slope Arms and to move off.

32. RETURNING THE KING'S COLOUR.

The Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) is halted at the spot (close to the landing place or barracks) where it is intended that the King's Colour shall be surrendered, receiving the following orders:—

**"Guard of Honour Halt.
(or Escort Com- Into Line, Left (or Right)
pany). —Turn.
Open Order—March."**

At the order **"Open Order—March,"** the Colour Party will stand fast and the Colour Escort will advance and halt, facing the centre of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) at a distance of 15 paces.

The Commander of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) orders **"Royal Salute, Present—Arms"** (the Colour Escort will conform, the C.P.O. saluting with the hand, and the band or bugles will play as before), **"March out the King's Colour."**

The Colour Officer orders the Colour Party to Slope Arms and move off and halts them 4 paces from the Colour Escort.

The Colour Officer then goes forward and hands the King's Colour to the Chief Petty Officer, who receives it at the "Port," bunched. The Colour Officer salutes with his hand, turns about, resumes his position with the Colour Party, draws his sword, again salutes the King's Colour, ordering the Colour Party to **"Present—Arms."**

This is the cue to the Commander of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) that the ceremony is over. He then orders **"Slope—Arms."** The Colour Escort and the Colour Party will conform.

The Colour Escort will now be moved off by the Chief Petty Officer and they will convey the King's Colour to the boat or inside Barracks, furl and case it and return it to the place where it is to be kept.

When the Colour Escort has moved off the Commander of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company) will give the following orders:—

“Guard of Honour (or Close Order—March.
Escort Company).
Divisions (or Half Five Paces Inwards—
Companies). March.
Guard of Honour (or Move to the Right (or
Escort Company). Left) in Fours.
Form—Fours.
Right—(or Left).
Quick—March.”

The Colour Officer will step off the Colour Party so as to take post in rear of the Guard of Honour (or Escort Company).

Note.—All orders to the Colour Party are given to them by the Colour Officer in a voice loud enough for them *only* to hear.

CEREMONIAL GUARDS.

33. GENERAL REMARKS.

Men selected should be as tall as possible and 10 per cent. spare should be drilled with the Guard. It should be explained to them when and for whom the Guard will be mounted.

Ceremonial guards will dress by the right or left as laid down in Ceremonial, Section 6.

On the march bayonets will be fixed. Officers' swords to be at the *Carry* when in the vicinity of the place where the guard is to be mounted.

If the King's Colour is paraded, the Colour Officer will be in the centre of the guard.

34. COMPLIMENTS PAID BY CEREMONIAL GUARDS.

“On the March.”

A Ceremonial Guard with King's Colour uncased or without King's Colour.	Will only pay compliment to	Other Ceremonial guards or Armed Parties with King's Colour uncased, the compliment “Eyes Right” being given to the King's Colour on passing it.
---	-----------------------------	--

Note.—If passing an Officer of high rank, no action should be taken.

“At the Halt.”

A Ceremonial guard with King's Colour uncased or without King's Colour.	Will only pay compliment to	Other Ceremonial guards or Armed Parties with King's Colour uncased, the compliment “Present Arms” being given to the King's Colour as it passes.
---	-----------------------------	---

Note.—If passed by an Officer of high rank, the Guard should be called to “Attention.”

For instructions regarding salutes to be given by Guards of Honour to the personages for whom they are mounted *vide* King's Regulations and Admiralty Instructions and Addenda.

35. INSPECTION OF A CEREMONIAL GUARD.

A Ceremonial Guard will be inspected with arms at the “Order,” bayonets fixed and ranks in “Open Order” formation, the executive orders to “open” or “close” the ranks being:—

“Open Order—March” - Rear rank, and supernumerary ranks in rear, step back two paces.

"Close Order—March" - Rear ranks, and supernumerary ranks in rear, step forward two paces.

The Officer Commanding the Guard will be three paces in front of the second file from the right, or, in a confined space, from the flank by which the personage for whom the guard is mounted will approach, the second senior officer will be in front of the centre. If there is a third officer he will be three paces in front of the second file from the other flank. When a Guard parades with the King's Colour the Officer with the King's Colour will always take post three paces in front of the centre of the Guard. When the personage for whom the guard is mounted arrives, the guard will Present Arms and the bugler will sound the salute or the band will play. Guard will then Slope Arms and Order Arms and be inspected, the King's Colour remaining at the Carry. The Officer Commanding the Guard will invariably accompany the personage for whom it is mounted, walking on his outer hand round the ranks.

Note.—Method of addressing a party of Seamen on shore—

If the party consisting of men from different ships, or from a single ship, is in the presence of military, the prefix should be Naval, *e.g.*, Naval Guard, Slope—Arms. If the bodies of men are complete from one ship, and if more than one ship's company is present, the men should be distinguished by the name of their ship, *e.g.*, "EXCELLENT," Attention.

The order **Royal Salute, Present—Arms** will only be given when the guard is mounted for Royalty. On all other occasions the order will be **General Salute, Present—Arms**.

36. STRENGTH OF CEREMONIAL GUARDS.

A Guard of Honour mounted for a member of the Royal Family or for a personage representing a member of the Royal Family will be addressed as "Royal Guard" and will consist of:—

- 1 Lieut. Commander or Lieut.-in-Command.
- 2 other Commissioned or Warrant Officers one of whom must be a Lieutenant or Sub-Lieutenant if the King's Colour is paraded.
- 4 Petty Officers.
- 96 Men.
- 1 Bugler.

A Guard of Honour for Flag Officers, Commanders-in-Chief, and Officers of equivalent rank in the other services will consist of:—

- 1 Lieutenant-in-Command.
- 1 other Commissioned or Warrant Officer.
- 2 Petty Officers.
- 48 Men.
- 1 Bugler.

A Guard of Honour for Rear-Admirals not Commanders-in-Chief, Commodores and Officers of equivalent rank in the other services will consist of:—

- 1 Lieutenant or Sub-Lieutenant-in-Command.
- 2 Petty Officers.
- 48 Men.
- 1 Bugler.

LINING THE STREETS.

37. GENERAL REMARKS.

The Battalion Commander and Officer Instructor will be on that flank of the unit which the procession approaches first, and the Second-in-Command on the other flank.

Officers and the King's Colour will be on the off side of the road, looking in the direction in which the procession is moving. Officers will be on that flank of their platoons which the procession approaches, one pace from the ranks towards the centre of the road. Petty Officers, who will fix bayonets and present arms with the men, will be in the ranks.

Bands and drums may be placed where convenient, but must not be at points where the traffic is left open by the police. The leading rank must be in line with the other troops lining the route.

The ground is usually allotted to battalions in accordance with the instructions of the General Officer Commanding. Markers must be sent forward by units before their arrival, to show the extent occupied by each company after the extension is completed.

When units arrive, each company is to be marched in close order to its place, and each Platoon Commander will then extend his platoon on the section of the road allotted to it, one rank on each side.

Allowance must be made in calculating the extensions of platoons for the presence of all Petty Officers in the ranks, and for the spaces where Cavalry are posted, as no Infantry will stand in front of the Cavalry.

The Company Commander, on the flank which the procession first approaches, receives orders from the Battalion Commander as to when the compliment is to be paid. Compliments are paid on the executive order of Company Commanders, in succession, as the procession approaches their flank, or of Platoon Commanders if the extension is wide and the men have difficulty in hearing. Men should be cautioned to watch their Platoon Officer's sword as they may not hear the words of command owing to the cheering, &c.

When different Royal Personages pass in different processions, each one is saluted, but when they all pass

in one general procession the salute is given to the chief Royal Personage only.

If the unit to line the streets is smaller than a battalion, it should conform to procedure similar to the above.

38. PROCEDURE FOR LINING THE STREETS.

Situation.	Royal Procession.	Funeral Procession.
After forming up on either side of the road, &c.	(with bayonets fixed). Stand at—Ease.	(with bayonets unfixed). Stand at—Ease.
Approach of the procession.	Attention. Slope—Arms.	Attention. Rest on your Arms —Reversed.
While the carriage or gun carriage passes.	Royal (or General) Salute, Present—Arms. Slope—Arms. Order—Arms.	Present—Arms. Reverse—Arms. Rest on your Arms —Reversed.
After procession has passed.	Stand at—Ease. and await orders to march away.	Attention. Slope—Arms. Order—Arms. Stand at—Ease. and await orders to march away.

MISCELLANEOUS.

39. DRESS ON CEREMONIAL OCCASIONS.

Officers :—Swords and gaiters if No. 5 dress is ordered.

Men :—Drill order and gaiters, irrespective of dress ordered. Buglers will wear cutlasses.

Officers, Petty Officers and men are to be dressed in their respective uniform exactly alike.

The following points require attention:—

Boots.—To be in good repair, well polished and tied so that they do not come undone.

Leggings.—Should be new and fit the wearer—they are not all the same size. The lacing should be straight up and down the outside of the leg and the straps tucked neatly away under the buckle.

Trousers.—Should be folded taut down to the ankle and tucked inside the socks so that they do not bag at the knee.

Badges.—Must be sewn on in the correct position.

Silks.—Tied under the collar with a reefknot, the bight of the silk hanging down about 1½ inches below the tapes. All tapes should be the same length.

Lanyards.—Should be new.

Collars.—Should be of the same shade.

Caps.—Should be worn in such a way that the air holes are over the ear. Chin stays should be well fitting, and if down, pass just in front of the ears. Cap ribbons should be new and tied with a small bow over the left ear, the centre letter being vertically over the nose.

Greatcoats.—Uniform Naval overcoats (not watchcoats) are to be worn in cold or wet weather.

When the Naval party is to act in concert with the Army, the responsible Senior Naval Officer is to ascertain whether the Army units are to wear greatcoats and arrange for Naval dress to conform as far as possible. Parties provided with greatcoats will not require oilskins.

Officers are not to wear greatcoats unless these are provided also for the ratings of the party.

Mackintosh coats for Officers and oilskins for ratings may be worn in lieu of greatcoats if available and more appropriate: but all are to be dressed alike.

40. LONDON PARTIES.

If necessary an Admiralty motor lorry will meet parties at the London Railway station to carry greatcoats, &c.

Application should be made direct to the Director of Stores, Admiralty.

Arrangements have been made for a mounted policeman to meet detachments of not less than 100 and assist the Commanding Officer in finding the way, &c. When such an escort is required, application should be made to the Deputy Assistant Commissioner "A," New Scotland Yard, London, S.W.1, as much notice as possible being given.

Whenever practicable and desirable the Commander-in-Chief may arrange for parties to be accompanied by a band.

Bands are desirable not only as helping to maintain a high marching standard, but also in preventing straggling and warning point-duty police in time for them to make the necessary traffic arrangements.

Officers in command of parties, if requiring to make urgent inquiries at the Admiralty are to apply to the Office of the Second Sea Lord.

41. LANDING OF THE WHITE ENSIGN.

On occasions of important Ceremonial Reviews and International Naval Displays on shore abroad, at which the parading of the King's Colour is not authorised, the White Ensign may be carried with Naval Landing Parties at the discretion of the Commander-in-Chief or Senior Officer present.

The landing of the White Ensign in foreign territory is to be restricted to States recognised by the British Government, and is to be limited to occasions when the Head of the Foreign State is present.

Except where hereinafter specified the movements for the White Ensign when landed for ceremonial

purposes should conform to the procedure given for the King's Colour on pages 319 to 322, Section 29.

The White Ensign will always be carried on such occasions at the head of the column when on the march and in front of the leading unit on the march past.

When receiving the Reviewing Officer the White Ensign will be carried in front of the centre of the unit.

A Petty Officer should generally be detailed to carry the Ensign supported by a Petty Officer on either flank.

The Ensign may be carried furled or unfurled.

When carried unfurled all Officers and Men are to salute on passing.

When carried furled the White Ensign is to be rolled round the Ensign Staff and no salutes will be made.

The Ensign may be furled in wet weather, disembarking or embarking, or on any other occasions on the march when ceremony is not desired.

The White Ensign will be dipped in salute when receiving the Reviewing Officer and on passing the Inspecting Officer on the march past. A salute by letting fly will not be carried out.

The White Ensign is to be at the order when arms are at the order and at the carry when arms are at the slope.

When marching it is always to be at the carry when unfurled and at the slope when furled.

Printed under the authority of His Majesty's Stationery Office
By Eyre and Spottiswoode, Ltd., East Harding Street, E.C. 4,
Printers to the King's most Excellent Majesty.

For

THEATRE TICKETS

(London, Paris or New York Theatres)

go always to

KEITH PROWSE

*The Largest Theatre Ticket
Dealers in the World.*

YOU want Best Seats
WE have them

in all bookable parts for all performances.

(Note : These seats cannot be obtained elsewhere)

100 Branches and Agencies
in London and the Provinces.

Equal facilities everywhere.

Wire, write, phone or call.

*Large-Plan Book of all London Theatres will be sent
to you, anywhere (post free).*

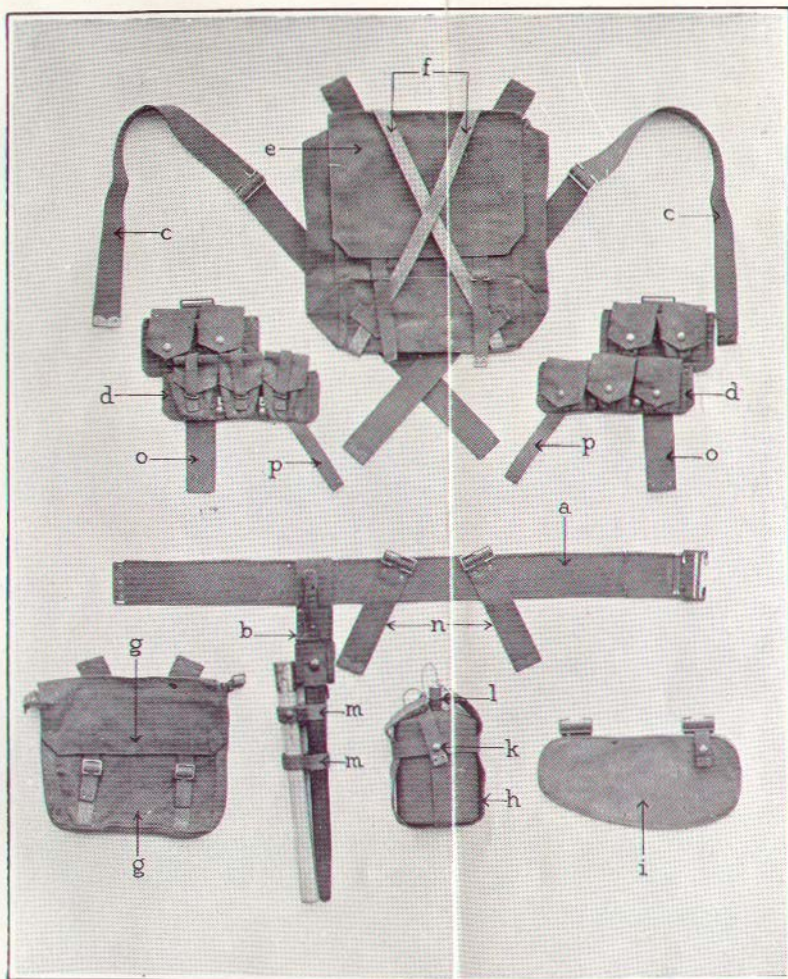
We supply also—

Pianos, Gramophones, Records, Music, Etc.

KEITH PROWSE & CO., Ltd.

159, NEW BOND ST., W.1 (Regent 6000)

48, CHEAPSIDE, E.C.2 - - (City 473)





Musketry Order.



"Fatigue Order."



Marching Order—"Without Pack."



Marching Order—Front.



Marching Order—Back.



Marching Order—Side.



Position of "Firing—Sitting."

Plate 30.



Position of "Stand Easy" with the Sword.

Plate 31.



Position of "Stand at Ease" with the Sword.



Marching with the Sword sheathed.



Position of "Carry" with the Sword.



Position of "Recover" with the Sword.



Position of "Slope" with the Sword.



Fig. i—*Saluting with the Sword on the March.*
1st Motion.



Fig. ii—*Saluting with the Sword on the March.*
2nd Motion.



Fig. iii—*Saluting with the Sword on the March.*
3rd Motion.

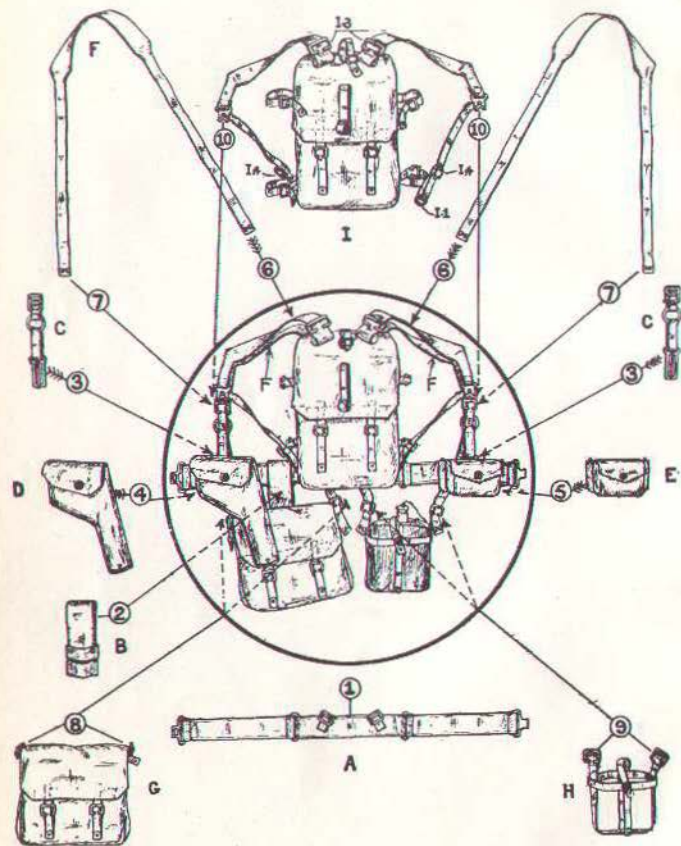


Fig. i.—Pistol Equipment—Outside.

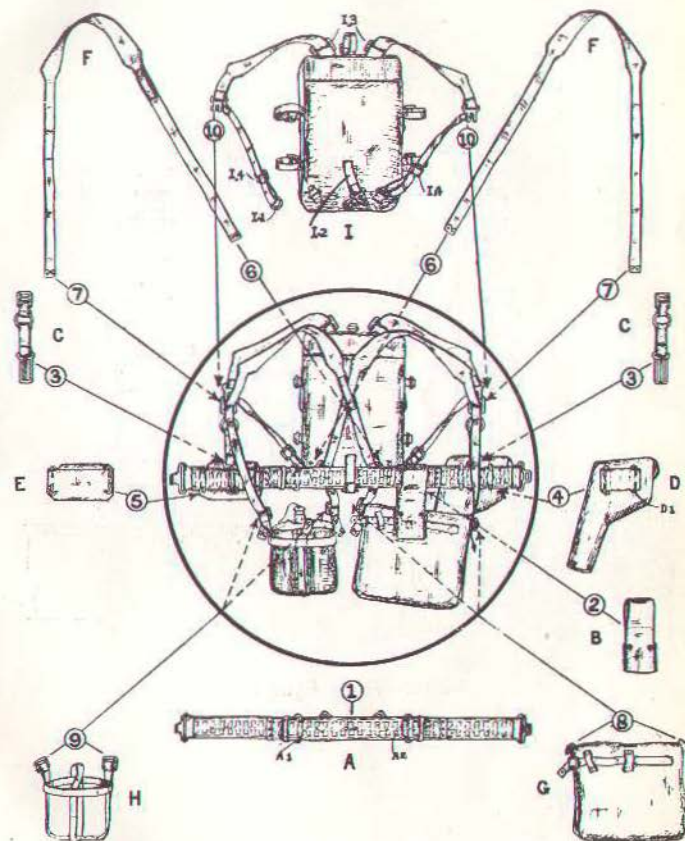


Fig. ii.—Pistol Equipment—Inside.

Plate 46.



Pistol Equipment—Side view.

Plate 47.



Pistol Equipment—Back view.

The SHIPS' COMPOSITIONS of



43, Pembroke Place, Liverpool,

are the Perfected Products of 12 years' Systematic Research
by scientists of eminence in the University world.

UNSURPASSED FOR HIGH SPEED AND FUEL ECONOMY
(Saving exceeds whole cost of paint.)

DEFINITELY DECREASE PERCENTAGE OF SLIP.

Vessels repeatedly kept free from shell,
grass, and corrosion for over 12 months.

A shipowner's testimony to a 12 months' out-of-dock result:—

*"Your invention is in the front rank. The steamer's bottom is
in excellent condition; she might have gone for another six months
without repainting."*

"EVERCLEAN" AND "COASTLANTIC" COMPOSITIONS.

ANTI-CORROSIVE.

Practically indestructible.

ANTI-FOULING.

50 % more efficient than ordinary Compositions.

AS SUPPLIED TO TRANSPORTS, MAIL STEAMERS, MOTOR
VESSELS, AND STEAMSHIPS ENGAGED IN THE FOULEST
WATERS IN THE WORLD.

In the
Progress and Success
of
Navy, Army & Air Force Institutes.

all Ranks & Ratings are keenly
interested. For this reason:
that 'NAAFI' is the Services'
own Business—

belonging to the Services,
controlled by the Services,
and aiming solely at the
promotion of
Service Interests

A business without Shareholders
—consequently with no Dividends
to pay, but paying substantial
Rebate on all Purchases
and securing all ultimate
profits for the benefit
of the Service Man

McEwan's

GLOBE
BRAND

CELEBRATED
PALE ALE

The favourite Beer
all over the Globe.

OBTAINABLE AT ALL THE PRINCIPAL
NAVAL DEPOTS AT HOME & ABROAD.

WM. McEWAN & Co., Ltd.,
Fountain Brewery, EDINBURGH.

AGENCIES

SACCONE & SPEED LTD., 33 Railway Street, Chatham.

Do. 21 The Hard, Portsea

Do. 50 Fore Street, Devonport.

Do. Naval Contractors, Gibraltar.

ANTHONY TABONA & SONS, Naval Contractors, Malta.

ELEFTHERIS & Co., Alexandria & Port Said.

PALLONJEE DINSHAW & Co., Steamer Point, Aden.

BOUSTEAD & Co., LTD., Merchants, Singapore.

DONNELLY & WHYTE, Merchants, Hong Kong.

*The Whisky
that made the
name famous!*

Lauder's
Royal Northern Cream
Scotch Whisky

*Supplied to the Navy,
Army and United Services
Clubs throughout the World.*

Archibald Lauder & Co
186 West George St Glasgow

The B.S.A.
L.E. '33
Service Rifle



B. S. A

**Shot Guns, Sporting & Target Rifles,
and Naval, Military and Police Armament**

The B.S.A. Trade
Mark—a guaran-
tee of Quality.



B.S.A. Guns, Ltd., have a world-wide reputation for the manufacture of 12-bore Hammerless Shot Guns, '22 Miniature Sporting Rifles, L.E. '303 and '315 High-velocity Sporting Rifles, Martini Sporting Rifles, L.E. '303 Target Rifles, '22 Match Rifles, B.S.A. Air Rifles, and a wide range of Naval, Military and Police Armament, including Line-throwing Guns, Service Rifles, Machine Guns, Riot Guns, etc.

Write for full specifications, post free.

B.S.A. GUNS, Ltd., 107 Small Heath, Birmingham.
(Proprietors: The Birmingham Small Arms Co., Ltd.)

**That useless old jewellery
—means money for you!**

Send all your old and sur-
plus gold, jewellery,
watches, chains, bangles,
old-fashioned silver, etc.,
by Registered Post to—

ALLEN & DAWS, Goldsmiths
LONDON STREET, NORWICH.

(Established over 60 years)

*They will send you a cash offer, and promptly
return the goods if it is not acceptable.*

The Dangers of Nerve strain!

Headaches, Depression, Lack of Energy—these are all signs of strained nerves. They are also warnings. Neglect those warnings—and you run the risk of a serious breakdown in health.

Remember this. Strained nerves are starved nerves. You have not given them the energising and restorative material they need.

Feed your nerves with the wealth of nourishment contained in "Ovaltine" Tonic Food Beverage. Made from Nature's Tonic Foods, ripe barley malt, creamy milk and eggs—a combination unequalled for restoring nerve force and building up the nervous system.

OVALTINE

TONIC FOOD BEVERAGE

Builds-up Brain, Nerve and Body

Sold by all Chemists at 1/6, 2/6 and 4/6.



NO MISFIRES.

You want to look as fit as you feel. And fitness begins in the cabin in the mornings, and—no mistake about it—a misfire shave is irritating to the temper and the skin.

"Erasmic" Shaving Stick never misfires.

It is the soap for every man, naval officer or sportsman.

It is the most soothing of Shaving Soaps.

It makes the shave a luxury, not a bother.

ERASMIC

SHAVING STICK

Price 1/-

ERASMIC, Perfumers, LONDON and PARIS.

IZAL KILLS GERMS IZAL KILLS GERMS

ANTIS

THE R

T

NEW

IZAL KILLS GERMS IZAL KILLS GERMS